CHEM 110

Spencer Berger

Bellingham Technical College

CHEM& 110 BTC

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the hundreds of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing and "consuming." Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects.

Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.

The LibreTexts mission is to unite students, faculty and scholars in a cooperative effort to develop an easy-to-use online platform for the construction, customization, and dissemination of OER content to reduce the burdens of unreasonable textbook costs to our students and society. The LibreTexts project is a multi-institutional collaborative venture to develop the next generation of open-access texts to improve postsecondary education at all levels of higher learning by developing an Open Access Resource environment. The project currently consists of 14 independently operating and interconnected libraries that are constantly being optimized by students, faculty, and outside experts to supplant conventional paper-based books. These free textbook alternatives are organized within a central environment that is both vertically (from advance to basic level) and horizontally (across different fields) integrated.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXOne and are supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org. More information on our activities can be found via Facebook (https://facebook.com/Libretexts), Twitter (https://twitter.com/libretexts), or our blog (http://Blog.Libretexts.org).

This text was compiled on 02/26/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in ***Back Matter/Detailed Licensing****.*

1: Module 1

1.1: Prelude to Chemistry

If you are reading these words, you are likely starting a chemistry course. Get ready for a fantastic journey through a world of wonder, delight, and knowledge. One of the themes of this book is "chemistry is everywhere," and indeed it is; you would not be alive if it were not for chemistry, because your body is a big chemical machine.

Figure 1.1.1 © Thinkstock

6 images showing a volcanic eruption, large dinner spread, explosion, red wine, a pool of large fish, and molecules are laid out together.

If you do not believe it, do not worry. Every chapter in this book contains examples that will show you how chemistry is, in fact, everywhere. So enjoy the ride, and enjoy chemistry.

1.2: Basic Definitions

Learning Objective

- Learn the basic terms used to describe matter

The definition of chemistry—the study of the interactions of matter with other matter and with energy—uses some terms that should also be defined. We start the study of chemistry by defining basic terms.

Matter

Matter is anything that has mass and takes up space. A book is matter, a computer is matter, food is matter, and dirt in the ground is matter. Sometimes matter may be difficult to identify. For example, air is matter, but because it is so thin compared to other matter (e.g., a book, a computer, food, and dirt), we sometimes forget that air has mass and takes up space. Things that are not matter include thoughts, ideas, emotions, and hopes.

✓ Example 1.2.1

Which of the following is matter and not matter?

a. a hot dog
b. love
c. a tree

Solution

a. A hot dog has mass and takes up space, so it is matter.
b. Love is an emotion, and emotions are not matter.
c. A tree has mass and takes up space, so it is matter.

? Exercise 1.2.1

Which of the following is matter and not matter?

a. the moon
b. an idea for a new invention

Answer a

The moon is matter.

Answer b

The invention itself may be matter, but the idea for it is not.

To understand matter and how it changes, we need to be able to describe matter. There are two basic ways to describe matter: physical properties and chemical properties.

Physical properties

Physical properties are characteristics that describe matter as it exists. Some physical characteristics of matter are shape, color, size, and temperature. An important physical property is the **phase** (or **state**) of matter. The three fundamental phases of matter are solid, liquid, and gas (Figure 1.2.1).

Figure 1.2.1: The Phases of Matter. Chemistry recognizes three fundamental phases of matter: solid (left), liquid (middle), and gas (right). (CC BY-SA 3.0; Spirit469). The solid state depicted is an ice sculpture of an angel, the liquid state is a drop of water, and the gas is clouds made of water vapor.

Chemical Properties

Chemical properties are characteristics of matter that describe how matter changes form in the presence of other matter. Does a sample of matter burn? Burning is a chemical property. Does it behave violently when put in water? This reaction is a chemical property as well (Figure 1.2.2). In the following chapters, we will see how descriptions of physical and chemical properties are important aspects of chemistry.

Figure 1.2.2: Chemical Properties. The fact that this match burns is a chemical property of the match. (Sebastian Ritter (Rise0011)).

Physical Change

A physical change occurs when a sample of matter changes one or more of its physical properties. For example, a solid may melt (Figure 1.2.3), or alcohol in a thermometer may change volume as the temperature changes. A physical change does not affect the chemical composition of matter.

Figure 1.2.2: Physical Changes: The solid ice melts into liquid water—a physical change. A time-lapse animation of ice cubes melting in a glass over 50 minutes. (Public Domain; Moussa).

Chemical Change

Chemical change is the process of demonstrating a chemical property, such as the burning match in Figure 1.2.2 "Chemical Properties". As the matter in the match burns, its chemical composition changes, and new forms of matter with new physical properties are created. Note that chemical changes are frequently accompanied by physical changes, as the new matter will likely have different physical properties from the original matter.

✓ Example 1.2.2

Describe each process as a physical change or a chemical change.

a. Water in the air turns into snow.
b. A person's hair is cut.
c. Bread dough becomes fresh bread in an oven.

Solution

a. Because the water is going from a gas phase to a solid phase, this is a physical change.
b. Your long hair is being shortened. This is a physical change.
c. Because of the oven's temperature, chemical changes are occurring in the bread dough to make fresh bread. These are chemical changes. (In fact, a lot of cooking involves chemical changes.)

? Exercise 1.2.2

Identify each process as a physical change or a chemical change.

a. A fire is raging in a fireplace.
b. Water is warmed to make a cup of coffee.

Answer a

chemical change

Answer b

physical change

Substance

A sample of matter that has the same physical and chemical properties throughout is called a substance. Sometimes the phrase *pure substance* is used, but the word *pure* isn't needed. The definition of the term *substance* is an example of how chemistry has a specific definition for a word that is used in everyday language with a different, vaguer definition. Here, we will use the term *substance* with its strict chemical definition.

> *Chemistry recognizes two different types of substances: elements and compounds.*

Element

An element is the simplest type of chemical substance; it cannot be broken down into simpler chemical substances by ordinary chemical means. There are 118 elements known to science, of which 80 are stable. (The other elements are radioactive, a condition we will consider in Chapter 15.) Each element has its own unique set of physical and chemical properties. Examples of elements include iron, carbon, and gold.

Compound

A compound is a combination of more than one element. The physical and chemical properties of a compound are different from the physical and chemical properties of its constituent elements; that is, it behaves as a completely different substance. There are over 50 million compounds known, and more are being discovered daily. Examples of compounds include water, penicillin, and sodium chloride (the chemical name for common table salt).

Mixtures

Physical combinations of more than one substance are called mixtures. Elements and compounds are not the only ways in which matter can be present. We frequently encounter objects that are physical combinations of more than one element or compound—mixtures. There are two types of mixtures.

Heterogeneous Mixture

A heterogeneous mixture is a mixture composed of two or more substances. It is easy to tell, sometimes by the naked eye, that more than one substance is present.

Homogeneous Mixture/ Solution

A homogeneous mixture is a combination of two or more substances that is so intimately mixed, that the mixture behaves as a single substance. Another word for a homogeneous mixture is a solution. Thus, a combination of salt and steel wool is a heterogeneous mixture because it is easy to see which particles of the matter are salt crystals and which are steel wool. On the other hand, if you take salt crystals and dissolve them in water, it is very difficult to tell that you have more than one substance present just by looking—even if you use a powerful microscope. The salt dissolved in water is a homogeneous mixture, or a solution (Figure $1.2.3$).

Figure $1.2.3$: Types of Mixtures © Thinkstock. On the left, the combination of two substances is a heterogeneous mixture because the particles of the two components look different. On the right, the salt crystals have dissolved in the water so finely that you cannot tell that salt is present. The homogeneous mixture appears like a single substance.

✓ Example $1.2.3$

Identify the following combinations as heterogeneous mixtures or homogenous mixtures.

a. soda water (carbon dioxide is dissolved in water)
b. a mixture of iron metal filings and sulfur powder (both iron and sulfur are elements)

Solution

a. Because carbon dioxide is dissolved in water, we can infer from the behavior of salt crystals dissolved in water that carbon dioxide dissolved in water is (also) a homogeneous mixture.
b. Assuming that the iron and sulfur are simply mixed together, it should be easy to see what is iron and what is sulfur, so this is a heterogeneous mixture.

? Exercise $1.2.3$

a. the human body
b. an amalgam, a combination of some other metals dissolved in a small amount of mercury

Answer a

heterogeneous mixture

Answer b

homogeneous mixture

There are other descriptors that we can use to describe matter, especially elements. We can usually divide elements into metals and nonmetals, and each set shares certain (but not always all) properties.

Metal

A metal is an element that conducts electricity and heat well and is shiny, silvery, solid, ductile, and malleable. At room temperature, metals are solid (although mercury is a well-known exception). A metal is ductile because it can be drawn into thin wires (a property called *ductility*); and malleable because it can be pounded into thin sheets (a property called *malleability*).

Nonmetal

A non-metal is an element that is brittle when solid, and does not conduct electricity or heat very well. Non-metals cannot be made into thin sheets or wires (Figure 1.2.4). Nonmetals also exist in a variety of phases and colors at room temperature.

Semi-metals

Some elements have properties of both metals and nonmetals and are called semi-metals (or metalloids). We will see later how these descriptions can be assigned rather easily to various elements.

Figure 1.2.4: Semimetals © Thinkstock. On the left is some elemental mercury, the only metal that exists as a liquid at room temperature. It has all the other expected properties of a metal. On the right, elemental sulfur is a yellow nonmetal that usually is found as a powder.

Describing Matter Flowchart

"Describing Matter" is a flowchart of the relationships among the different ways of describing matter.

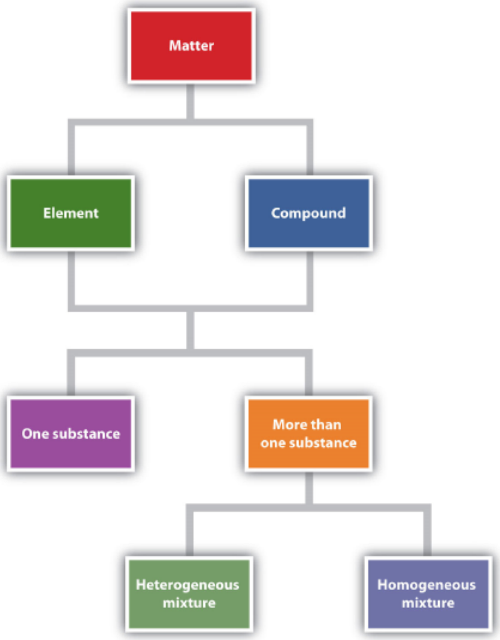


Figure 1.2.5: Describing Matter. This flowchart shows how matter can be described. Matter forks into element & compound which fork into 1 substance & more than 1 substance. More than 1 substance is homogenous or heterogenous.

✓ Example 1.2.1: Chemistry is Everywhere: In the Morning

Most people have a morning ritual, a process that they go through every morning to get ready for the day. Chemistry appears in many of these activities.

- If you take a shower or bath in the morning, you probably use soap, shampoo, or both. These items contain chemicals that interact with the oil and dirt on your body and hair to remove them and wash them away. Many of these products also contain chemicals that make you smell good; they are called *fragrances*.
- When you brush your teeth in the morning, you usually use toothpaste, a form of soap, to clean your teeth. Toothpastes typically contain tiny, hard particles called *abrasives* that physically scrub your teeth. Many toothpastes also contain fluoride, a substance that chemically interacts with the surface of the teeth to help prevent cavities.
- Perhaps you take vitamins, supplements, or medicines every morning. Vitamins and other supplements contain chemicals your body needs in small amounts to function properly. Medicines are chemicals that help combat diseases and promote health.
- Perhaps you make some fried eggs for breakfast. Frying eggs involves heating them enough so that a chemical reaction occurs to cook the eggs.
- After you eat, the food in your stomach is chemically reacted so that the body (mostly the intestines) can absorb food, water, and other nutrients.
- If you drive or take the bus to school or work, you are using a vehicle that probably burns gasoline, a material that burns fairly easily and provides energy to power the vehicle. Recall that burning is a chemical change.

These are just a few examples of how chemistry impacts your everyday life. And we haven't even made it to lunch yet!

Figure 1.2.6: Chemistry in Real Life © Thinkstock. Examples of chemistry can be found everywhere—in personal hygiene products, food, and motor vehicles. Personal hygiene products (left), food (middle), and motor vehicles (right) images next to one another.

Key Takeaways

- Chemistry is the study of matter and its interactions with other matter and energy.
- Matter is anything that has mass and takes up space.
- Matter can be described in terms of physical properties and chemical properties.
- Physical properties and chemical properties of matter can change.
- Matter is composed of elements and compounds.
- Combinations of different substances are called mixtures.
- Elements can be described as metals, nonmetals, and semi-metals.

1.3: Chemistry as a Science

Learning Objective

- Learn what science is and how it works.

Chemistry is a branch of science. Although science itself is difficult to define exactly, the following definition can serve as a starting point. Science is the process of knowing about the natural universe through observation and experiment. Science is not the only process of knowing (e.g., the ancient Greeks simply sat and *thought*), but it has evolved over more than 350 years into the best process that humanity has devised, to date, to learn about the universe around us.

The process of science is usually stated as the *scientific method*, which is rather naively described as follows:

1. state a hypothesis,
2. test the hypothesis, and
3. refine the hypothesis

In actuality, the process is not that simple. (For example, a scientist does not go into their lab every day and exclaim, "I am going to state a hypothesis today and spend the day testing it!") The process is not that simple because science and scientists have a body of knowledge that has already been identified as coming from the highest level of understanding, and most scientists build from that body of knowledge.

An educated guess about how the natural universe works is called a **hypothesis**. A scientist who is familiar with how part of the natural universe works—say, a chemist—is interested in furthering that knowledge. That person makes a reasonable guess—a hypothesis—that is designed to see if the universe works in a new way as well. Here's an example of a hypothesis: "if I mix one part of hydrogen with one part of oxygen, I can make a substance that contains both elements."

> *For a hypothesis to be termed a scientific hypothesis, it has to be something that can be supported or refuted through carefully crafted experimentation or observation.*

Most good hypotheses are grounded in previously understood knowledge and represent a testable extension of that knowledge. The scientist then devises ways to test if that hypothesis is correct or not. That is, the scientist plans experiments. **Experiments are tests of the natural universe to see if a guess (hypothesis) is correct**. An experiment to test our previous hypothesis would be to actually mix hydrogen and oxygen and see what happens. Most experiments include observations of small, well-defined parts of the natural universe designed to see results of the experiments.

A Scientific Hypothesis

A hypothesis is often written in the form of an if/then statement that gives a possibility (if) and explains what may happen because of the possibility (then). For example, if eating elemental sulfur repels ticks, then someone that is eating sulfur every day will not get ticks.

Why do we have to do experiments? Why do we have to test? Because the natural universe is not always so obvious, experiments are necessary. For example, it is fairly obvious that if you drop an object from a height, it will fall. Several hundred years ago (coincidentally, near the inception of modern science), the concept of gravity explained that test. However, is it obvious that the entire natural universe is composed of only about 115 fundamental chemical building blocks called elements? This wouldn't seem true if you looked at the world around you and saw all the different forms matter can take. In fact, the concept of *the element* is only about 200 years old, and the last naturally occurring element was identified about 80 years ago. It took decades of tests and millions of experiments to establish what the elements actually are. These are just two examples; a myriad of such examples exists in chemistry and science in general.

When enough evidence has been collected to establish a general principle of how the natural universe works, the evidence is summarized in a theory. A theory is a general statement that explains a large number of observations. "All matter is composed of atoms" is a general statement, a theory, that explains many observations in chemistry. A theory is a very powerful statement in science. There are many statements referred to as "the theory of ________" or the "______ theory" in science (where the blanks represent a word or concept). When written in this way, theories indicate that science has an overwhelming amount of evidence of its correctness. We will see several theories in the course of this text.

A specific statement that is thought to never be violated by the entire natural universe is called a law. A scientific law is the highest understanding of the natural universe that science has and is thought to be inviolate. The fact that all matter attracts all other matter—the law of gravitation—is one such law. Note that the terms *theory* and *law* used in science have slightly different meanings from those in common usage; where theory is often used to mean hypothesis ("I have a theory…"), and a law is an arbitrary limitation that can be broken but with potential consequences (such as speed limits). Here again, science uses these terms differently, and it is important to apply their proper definitions when you use these words in science. (Figure $1.3.1$)

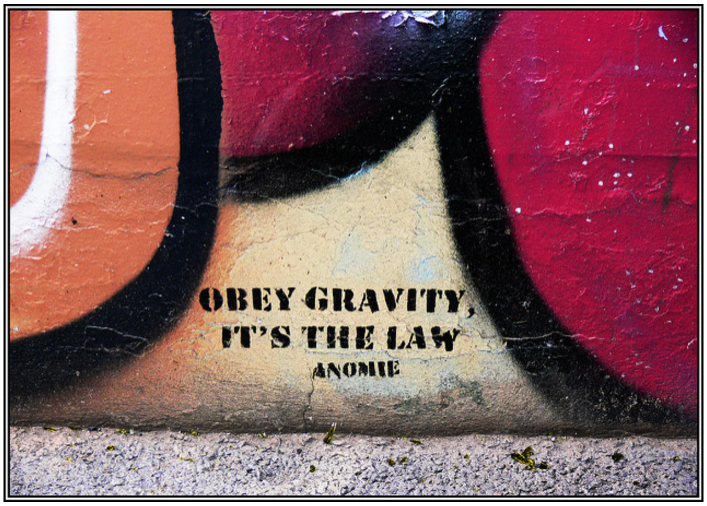


Figure $1.3.1$: Defining a law. Does this graffiti mean "law" the way science defines "law"? (CC BY-SA-NC-ND; Koppenbadger).

There is an additional phrase in our definition of science: "the natural universe." Science is concerned *only* with the natural universe. What is the natural universe? It's anything that occurs around us, well, naturally. Stars, planets, the appearance of life on earth; as well as how animals, plants, and other matter function are all part of the natural universe. Science is concerned with that—and *only* that.

Of course, there are other things that concern us. For example, is the English language part of science? Most of us can easily answer no; English is not science. English is certainly worth knowing (at least for people in predominantly English-speaking countries), but why isn't it science? English, or any human language, is not science because ultimately it is *contrived*; it is made up. Think of it: the word spelled b-l-u-e represents a certain color, and we all agree what color that is. But what if we used the word h-a-r-d to describe that color? (Figure $1.3.2$) That would be fine—as long as everyone agreed. Anyone who has learned a second language must initially wonder why a certain word is used to describe a certain concept; ultimately, the speakers of that language agreed that a particular word would represent a particular concept. It was contrived.

That doesn't mean language isn't worth knowing. It is very important in society. But it's not *science*. Science deals only with what occurs naturally.

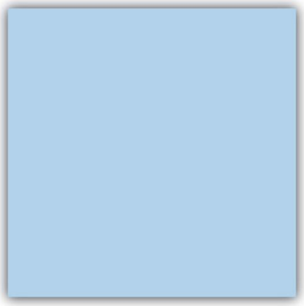


Figure 1.3.2: English Is Not Science. How would you describe this color? Blue or hard? Either way, you're not doing science.

✓ Example 1.3.1: Identifying Science

Which of the following fields would be considered science?

a. geology, the study of the earth
b. ethics, the study of morality
c. political science, the study of governance
d. biology, the study of living organisms

Solution

a. Because the earth is a natural object, the study of it is indeed considered part of science.
b. Ethics is a branch of philosophy that deals with right and wrong. Although these are useful concepts, they are not science.
c. There are many forms of government, but all are created by humans. Despite the fact that the word *science* appears in its name, political science is not true science.
d. Living organisms are part of the natural universe, so the study of them is part of science.

? Exercise 1.3.1

Which is part of science, and which is not?

a. dynamics, the study of systems that change over time
b. aesthetics, the concept of beauty

Answer A

science

Answer B

not science

The field of science has gotten so big that it is common to separate it into more specific fields. First, there is mathematics, the language of science. All scientific fields use mathematics to express themselves—some more than others. Physics and astronomy are scientific fields concerned with the fundamental interactions between matter and energy. Chemistry, as defined previously, is the study of the interactions of matter with other matter and with energy. Biology is the study of living organisms, while geology is the study of the earth. Other sciences can be named as well. Understand that these fields are not always completely separate; the boundaries between scientific fields are not always readily apparent. A scientist may be labeled a biochemist if he or she studies the chemistry of biological organisms.

Finally, understand that science can be either qualitative or quantitative. Qualitative implies a description of the quality of an object. For example, physical properties are generally qualitative descriptions: sulfur is yellow, your math book is heavy, or that statue is pretty. A quantitative description represents the specific amount of something; it means knowing how much of something is present, usually by counting or measuring it. Some quantitative descriptions include: 25 students in a class, 650 pages in a book, or a velocity of 66 miles per hour. Quantitative expressions are very important in science; they are also very important in chemistry.

✓ Example 1.3.2: qualitative vs. quantitative Descriptions

Identify each statement as either a qualitative description or a quantitative description.

a. Gold metal is yellow.
b. A ream of paper has 500 sheets in it.
c. The weather outside is snowy.
d. The temperature outside is 24 degrees Fahrenheit.

Solution

a. Because we are describing a physical property of gold, this statement is qualitative.
b. This statement mentions a specific amount, so it is quantitative.
c. The word *snowy* is a description of how the day is; therefore, it is a qualitative statement.
d. In this case, the weather is described with a specific quantity—the temperature. Therefore, it is quantitative.

? Exercise 1.3.2

Are these qualitative or quantitative statements?

a. Roses are red, and violets are blue.
b. Four score and seven years ago….

Answer A

qualitative

Answer B

quantitative

Food and Drink Application: Carbonated Beverages

Some of the simple chemical principles discussed in this chapter can be illustrated with carbonated beverages: sodas, beer, and sparkling wines. Each product is produced in a different way, but they all have one thing in common: they are solutions of carbon dioxide dissolved in water.

Carbon dioxide is a compound composed of carbon and oxygen. Under normal conditions, it is a gas. If you cool it down enough, it becomes a solid known as dry ice. Carbon dioxide is an important compound in the cycle of life on earth.

Even though it is a gas, carbon dioxide can dissolve in water, just like sugar or salt can dissolve in water. When that occurs, we have a homogeneous mixture, or a solution, of carbon dioxide in water. However, very little carbon dioxide can dissolve in water. If the atmosphere were pure carbon dioxide, the solution would be only about 0.07% carbon dioxide. In reality, the air is only about 0.03% carbon dioxide, so the amount of carbon dioxide in water is reduced proportionally.

However, when soda and beer are made, manufacturers do two important things: they use pure carbon dioxide gas, and they use it at very high pressures. With higher pressures, more carbon dioxide can dissolve in the water. When the soda or beer container is sealed, the high pressure of carbon dioxide gas remains inside the package. (Of course, there are more ingredients in soda and beer besides carbon dioxide and water.)

When you open a container of soda or beer, you hear a distinctive *hiss* as the excess carbon dioxide gas escapes. But something else happens as well. The carbon dioxide in the solution comes out of solution as a bunch of tiny bubbles. These bubbles impart a pleasing sensation in the mouth, so much so that the soda industry sold over *225 billion* servings of soda in the United States alone in 2009.

Some sparkling wines are made in the same way—by forcing carbon dioxide into regular wine. Some sparkling wines (including champagne) are made by sealing a bottle of wine with some yeast in it. The yeast *ferments*, a process by which the yeast converts sugars into energy and excess carbon dioxide. The carbon dioxide produced by the yeast dissolves in the wine. Then, when the champagne bottle is opened, the increased pressure of carbon dioxide is released, and the drink bubbles just like an expensive glass of soda.

Figure 1.3.3: Carbonated Beverages © Thinkstock. Soda, beer, and sparkling wine take advantage of the properties of a solution of carbon dioxide in water.

Soda (left), beer (middle) and sparkling wine (right) images next to one another.

Key Takeaways

- Science is a process of knowing about the natural universe through observation and experiment.
- Scientists go through a rigorous process to determine new knowledge about the universe; this process is generally referred to as the scientific method.
- Science is broken down into various fields, of which chemistry is one.
- Science, including chemistry, is both qualitative and quantitative.

1.4: Prelude to Measurements

Data suggest that a male child will weigh 50% of his adult weight at about 11 years of age. However, he will reach 50% of his adult height at only 2 years of age. It is obvious, then, that people eventually stop growing up but continue to grow out. Data also suggest that the average human height has been increasing over time. In industrialized countries, the average height of people increased 5.5 inches from 1810 to 1984. Most scientists attribute this simple, basic measurement of the human body to better health and nutrition.

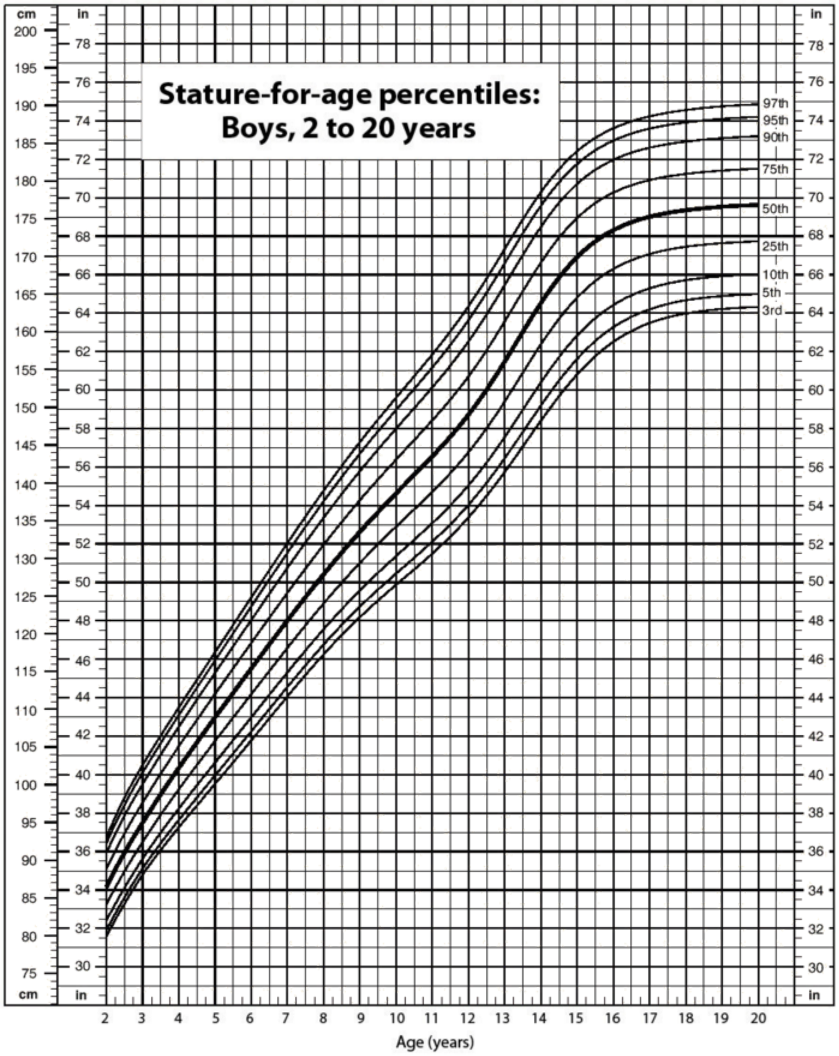


Figure 1.4.1: Human body measurement. Source: Chart courtesy of Centers for Disease Control and Prevention(opens in new window).

1.5: Expressing Numbers

Learning Objective

- Learn to express numbers properly

Quantities have two parts: the number and the unit. The number tells "how many." It is important to be able to express numbers properly so that the quantities can be communicated properly.

Standard Notation

Standard notation is the straightforward expression of a number. Numbers such as 17, 101.5, and 0.00446 are expressed in standard notation. For relatively small numbers, standard notation is fine. However, for very large numbers, such as 306,000,000, or for very small numbers, such as 0.000000419, standard notation can be cumbersome because of the number of zeros needed to place nonzero numbers in the proper position.

Scientific Notation

Scientific notation is an expression of a number using powers of 10. Powers of 10 are used to express numbers that have many zeros:

Table shows the powers of 10. Left side has 10 to a specific power and right side has the equation for the specified power.

10^0	= 1
10^1	= 10
10^2	= 100 = 10 × 10
10^3	= 1,000 = 10 × 10 × 10
10^4	= 10,000 = 10 × 10 × 10 × 10

and so forth.

The raised number to the right of the 10 indicates the number of factors of 10 in the original number. (Scientific notation is sometimes called *exponential notation*.) The exponent's value is equal to the number of zeros in the number expressed in standard notation.

Small numbers can also be expressed in scientific notation but with negative exponents:

Table shows the powers of 10 with negative exponents. Left side has 10 to a specific power and right side has the equation for the specified power.

10^{-1}	= 0.1 = 1/10
10^{-2}	= 0.01 = 1/100
10^{-3}	= 0.001 = 1/1,000
10^{-4}	= 0.0001 = 1/10,000

and so forth. Again, the value of the exponent is equal to the number of zeros in the denominator of the associated fraction. A negative exponent implies a decimal number less than one.

A number is expressed in scientific notation by writing the first nonzero digit, then a decimal point, and then the rest of the digits. The part of a number in scientific notation that is multiplied by a power of 10 is called the *coefficient*. We determine the power of 10 needed to make that number into the original number and multiply the written number by the proper power of 10. For example, to write 79,345 in scientific notation,

$$79,345 = 7.9345 \times 10,000 = 7.9345 \times 10^4$$

Thus, the number in scientific notation is 7.9345×10^4. For small numbers, the same process is used, but the exponent for the power of 10 is negative:

$$0.000411 = 4.11 \times \frac{1}{10,000} = 4.11 \times 10^{-4}$$

Typically, the extra zero digits at the end or the beginning of a number are not included (Figure 1.5.1).

Figure 1.5.1: "The Blue Marble" is a famous photograph of the Earth taken on December 7, 1972, by the crew of the Apollo 17 spacecraft en route to the Moon at a distance of about 29,000 kilometers. This is $2.9 \times 10^4\ km$. It shows Africa, Antarctica, and the Arabian Peninsula.The earth is about 93,000,000 miles from the sun. In scientific notation, this is $9.3 \times 10^7\ miles$. (Public Domain; NASA/Apollo 17 crew; taken by either Harrison Schmitt or Ron Evans.)

✓ Example 1.5.1: Expressing Numbers in Scientific Notation

Express these numbers in scientific notation.

a. 306,000
b. 0.00884
c. 2,760,000
d. 0.000000559

Solution

a. The number 306,000 is 3.06 times 100,000, or 3.06 times 10^5. In scientific notation, the number is 3.06×10^5.
b. The number 0.00884 is 8.84 times 1/1,000, which is 8.84 times 10^{-3}. In scientific notation, the number is 8.84×10^{-3}.
c. The number 2,760,000 is 2.76 times 1,000,000, which is the same as 2.76 times 10^6. In scientific notation, the number is written as 2.76×10^6. Note that we omit the zeros at the end of the original number.
d. The number 0.000000559 is 5.59 times 1/10,000,000, which is 5.59 times 10^{-7}. In scientific notation, the number is written as 5.59×10^{-7}.

? Exercise 1.5.1

Express these numbers in scientific notation.

a. 23,070
b. 0.0009706

Answer a

2.307×10^4

Answer b

9.706×10^{-4}

Another way to determine the power of 10 in scientific notation is to count the number of places you need to move the decimal point to get a numerical value between 1 and 10. The number of places equals the power of 10. This number is positive if you move the decimal point to the right and negative if you move the decimal point to the left:

$$5\underset{4}{\nwarrow}6,\underset{3}{\nwarrow}9\underset{2}{\nwarrow}0\underset{1}{\nwarrow}0 = 5.69 \times 10^{4} \qquad 0.\underset{1}{\nearrow}0\underset{2}{\nearrow}0\underset{3}{\nearrow}0\underset{4}{\nearrow}0\underset{5}{\nearrow}28 = 2.8 \times 10^{-5}$$

56900 can be written as 5.69 times 10 to the fourth power. 0.000028 can be written as 2.8 times 10 to the negative fifth power.

Many quantities in chemistry are expressed in scientific notation. When performing calculations, you may have to enter a number in scientific notation into a calculator. Be sure you know how to correctly enter a number in scientific notation into your calculator. Different models of calculators require different actions for properly entering scientific notation. If in doubt, consult your instructor immediately (Figure $1.5.2$).

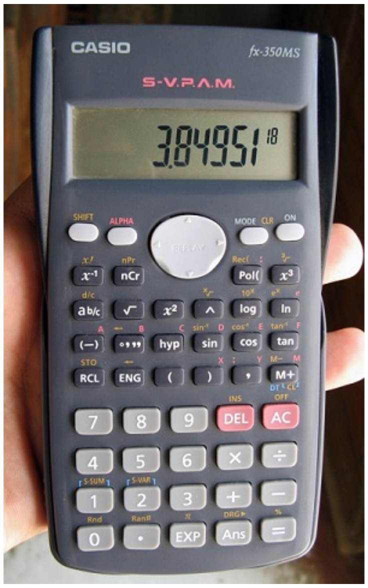


Figure $1.5.2$: This calculator shows only the coefficient and the power of 10 to represent the number in scientific notation. Thus, the number being displayed is 3.84951×10^{18}, or $3,849,510,000,000,000,000$. Source: "Casio" Asim Bijarani is licensed under Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 Generic.

Key Takeaways

- Standard notation expresses a number normally.
- Scientific notation expresses a number as a coefficient times a power of 10.
- The power of 10 is positive for numbers greater than 1 and negative for numbers between 0 and 1.

- **2.2: Expressing Numbers** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

1.6: Expressing Units

Learning Objective

- Learn the units that go with various quantities
- Express units using their abbreviations
- Make new units by combining numerical prefixes with units

A number indicates "how much," but the unit indicates "of what." The "of what" is important when communicating a quantity. For example, if you were to ask a friend how close you are to Lake Erie and your friend says "six," then your friend isn't giving you complete information. Six *what*? Six miles? Six inches? Six city blocks? The actual distance to the lake depends on what units you use.

Chemistry, like most sciences, uses the International System of Units, or SI for short. (The letters *SI* stand for the French "le Système International d'unités.") SI specifies certain units for various types of quantities, based on seven fundamental units. We will use most of the fundamental units in chemistry. Initially, we will deal with three fundamental units. The **meter** (m) is the SI unit of length. It is a little longer than a yard (Figure 1.6.1). The SI unit of mass is the **kilogram** (kg), which is about 2.2 pounds (lb). The SI unit of time is the **second** (s).

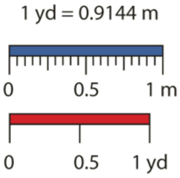


Figure 1.6.1: The Meter. The SI standard unit of length, the meter, is a little longer than a yard.

To express a quantity, you need to combine a number with a unit. If you have a length that is 2.4 m, then you express that length as simply 2.4 m. A time of 15,000 s can be expressed as 1.5×10^4 s in scientific notation.

Sometimes, a given unit is not an appropriate size to easily express a quantity. For example, the width of a human hair is very small, and it doesn't make much sense to express it in meters. SI also defines a series of *numerical prefixes*, referring to multiples or fractions of a fundamental unit, to make a unit more conveniently sized for a specific quantity. Table 1.6.1 lists the prefixes, their abbreviations, and their multiplicative factors. Some of the prefixes, such as kilo-, mega-, and giga-, represent more than one of the fundamental unit, while other prefixes, such as centi-, milli-, and micro-, represent fractions of the original unit. Note, too, that once again we are using powers of 10. Each prefix is a multiple of or fraction of a power of 10.

Table 1.6.1: Multiplicative Prefixes for SI Units

Prefix	Abbreviation	Multiplicative Amount	Power of Ten
giga-	G	1,000,000,000 ×	10^9 ×
mega-	M	1,000,000 ×	10^6 ×
kilo-	k	1,000 ×	10^3 ×
deci-	d	1/10 ×	×
centi-	c	1/100 ×	×
milli-	m	1/1,000 ×	×
micro-	μ*	1/1,000,000 ×	×
nano-	n	1/1,000,000,000 ×	×
pico-	p	1/1,000,000,000,000 ×	x
* The letter *μ* is the Greek letter lowercase equivalent to an m and is called "mu" (pronounced "myoo").			

To use the fractions to generate new units, simply combine the prefix with the unit itself; the abbreviation for the new unit is the combination of the abbreviation for the prefix and the abbreviation of the unit. For example, the kilometer (km) is 1,000 × meter, or 1,000 m. Thus, 5 kilometers (5 km) is equal to 5,000 m. Similarly, a millisecond (ms) is 1/1,000 × second, or one-thousandth of a second. Thus, 25 ms is 25 thousandths of a second. You will need to become proficient in combining prefixes and units. (You may recognize that one of our fundamental units, the kilogram, automatically has a prefix-unit combination. The word *kilogram* means 1,000 g.)

In addition to the fundamental units, SI also allows for derived units based on a fundamental unit or units. There are many derived units used in science. For example, the derived unit for area comes from the idea that area is defined as width times height. Because both width and height are lengths, they both have the fundamental unit of meter, so the unit of area is meter × meter, or meter^2 (m^2). This is sometimes spoken as "square meters." A unit with a prefix can also be used to derive a unit for area, so we can also have cm^2, mm^2, or km^2 as acceptable units for area.

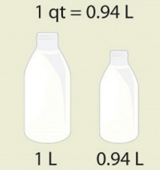


Figure 1.6.2: The Liter. The SI unit of volume, the liter, is slightly larger than 1 quart.

Volume is defined as length times width times height, so it has units of meter × meter × meter, or meter^3 (m^3)—sometimes spoken as "cubic meters." The cubic meter is a rather large unit, however, so another unit is defined that is somewhat more manageable: the liter (L). A liter is 1/1,000th of a cubic meter and is a little more than 1 quart in volume (Figure 1.6.2). Prefixes can also be used with the liter unit, so we can speak of milliliters (1/1,000th of a liter; mL) and kiloliters (1,000 L; kL).

Another definition of a liter is one-tenth of a meter cubed. Because one-tenth of a meter is 10 cm, then a liter is equal to 1,000 cm^3 (Figure 1.6.3). Because 1 L equals 1,000 mL, we conclude that 1 mL equals 1 cm^3; thus, these units are interchangeable.

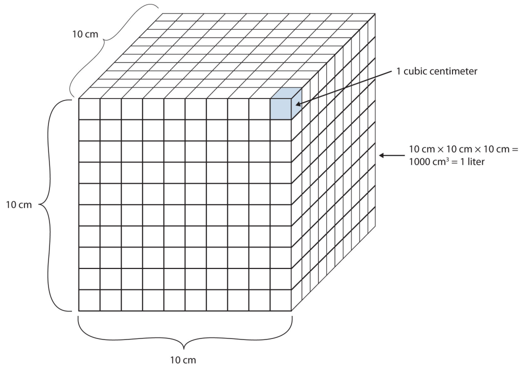


Figure 1.6.3: The size of one liter equals 1,000 cm^3, so 1 cm^3 is the same as 1 mL.

Units are not only multiplied together—they can also be divided. For example, if you are traveling at one meter for every second of time elapsed, your velocity is 1 meter per second, or 1 m/s. The word *per* implies division, so velocity is determined by dividing a distance quantity by a time quantity. Other units for velocity include kilometers per hour (km/h) or even micrometers per nanosecond (μm/ns). Later, we will see other derived units that can be expressed as fractions.

✓ Example 1.6.1

a. A human hair has a diameter of about 6.0 × 10^{-5} m. Suggest an appropriate unit for this measurement and write the diameter of a human hair in terms of that unit.
b. What is the velocity of a car if it goes 25 m in 5.0 s?

Solution

a. The scientific notation 10^{-5} is close to 10^{-6}, which defines the micro- prefix. Let us use micrometers as the unit for hair diameter. The number 6.0 × 10^{-5} can be written as 60 × 10^{-6}, and a micrometer is 10^{-6} m, so the diameter of a human hair is about 60 μm.
b. If velocity is defined as a distance quantity divided by a time quantity, then velocity is 25 meters/5.0 seconds. Dividing the numbers gives us 25/5.0 = 5.0, and dividing the units gives us meters/second, or m/s. The velocity is 5.0 m/s.

? Exercise 1.6.1

a. Express the volume of an Olympic-sized swimming pool, 2,500,000 L, in more appropriate units.
b. A common garden snail moves about 6.1 m in 30 min. What is its velocity in meters per minute (m/min)?

Answer a

- 2.5 ML

Answer b

- 0.203 m/min

Key Takeaways

- Numbers tell "how much," and units tell "of what."
- Chemistry uses a set of fundamental units and derived units from SI units.
- Chemistry uses a set of prefixes that represent multiples or fractions of units.
- Units can be multiplied and divided to generate new units for quantities.

1.7: Significant Figures

Learning Objective

- Apply the concept of significant figures to limit a measurement to the proper number of digits.
- Recognize the number of significant figures in a given quantity.
- Limit mathematical results to the proper number of significant figures.

If you use a calculator to evaluate the expression 337/217, you will get the following:

$$337 \div 217 = 1.5529953917$$

and so on for many more digits. Although this answer is correct, it is somewhat presumptuous. You start with two values that each have three digits, and the answer has *twelve* digits? That does not make much sense from a strict numerical point of view.

Consider using a ruler to measure the width of an object, as shown in Figure $1.7.1$. The object is definitely more than 1 cm long, so we know that the first digit in our measurement is 1. We see by counting the tick marks on the ruler that the object is at least three ticks after the 1. If each tick represents 0.1 cm, then we know the object is at least 1.3 cm wide. But our ruler does not have any more ticks between the 0.3 and the 0.4 marks, so we can't know exactly how much the next decimal place is. But with a practiced eye we can estimate it. Let us estimate it as about six-tenths of the way between the third and fourth tick marks, which estimates our hundredths place as 6, so we identify a measurement of 1.36 cm for the width of the object.

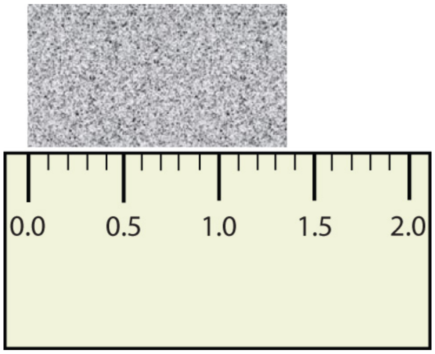


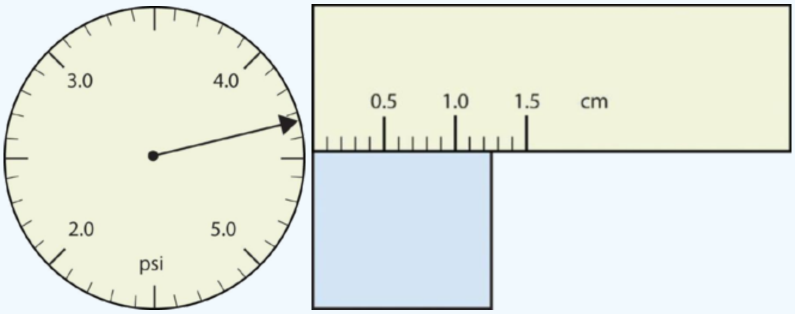
Figure $1.7.1$: Expressing Width. What is the proper way to express the width of this object?

Does it make any sense to try to report a thousandths place for the measurement? No, it doesn't; we are not exactly sure of the hundredths place (after all, it was an estimate only), so it would be fruitless to estimate a thousandths place. Our best measurement, then, stops at the hundredths place, and we report 1.36 cm as proper measurement.

This concept of reporting the proper number of digits in a measurement or a calculation is called significant figures. Significant figures (sometimes called significant digits) represent the limits of what values of a measurement or a calculation we are sure of. The convention for a measurement is that the quantity reported should be all known values and the first estimated value. The conventions for calculations are discussed as follows.

Example 1.7.1

Use each diagram to report a measurement to the proper number of significant figures.

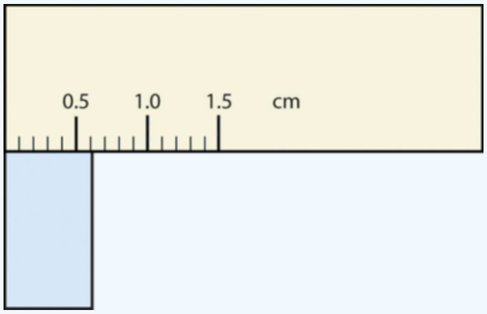


Solution

1. The arrow is between 4.0 and 5.0, so the measurement is at least 4.0. The arrow is between the third and fourth small tick marks, so it's at least 0.3. We will have to estimate the last place. It looks like about one-third of the way across the space, so let us estimate the hundredths place as 3. Combining the digits, we have a measurement of 4.33 psi (psi stands for "pounds per square inch" and is a unit of pressure, like air in a tire). We say that the measurement is reported to three significant figures.
2. The rectangle is at least 1.0 cm wide but certainly not 2.0 cm wide, so the first significant digit is 1. The rectangle's width is past the second tick mark but not the third; if each tick mark represents 0.1, then the rectangle is at least 0.2 in the next significant digit. We have to estimate the next place because there are no markings to guide us. It appears to be about halfway between 0.2 and 0.3, so we will estimate the next place to be a 5. Thus, the measured width of the rectangle is 1.25 cm. Again, the measurement is reported to three significant figures.

? Exercise 1.7.1

What would be the reported width of this rectangle?



Answer

0.63 cm

In many cases, you will be given a measurement. How can you tell by looking what digits are significant? For example, the reported population of the United States is 306,000,000. Does that mean that it is *exactly* three hundred six million, or is some estimation occurring?

The following conventions dictate which numbers in a reported measurement are significant and which are not significant:

1. Any nonzero digit is significant.
2. Any zeros between nonzero digits (i.e., embedded zeros) are significant.
3. Zeros at the end of a number without a decimal point (i.e., trailing zeros) are not significant; they serve only to put the significant digits in the correct positions. However, zeros at the end of any number with a decimal point are significant.
4. Zeros at the beginning of a decimal number (i.e., leading zeros) are not significant; again, they serve only to put the significant digits in the correct positions.

So, by these rules, the population figure of the United States has only three significant figures: the 3, the 6, and the zero between them. The remaining six zeros simply put the 306 in the millions position. (See Figure 1.7.2 for another example.)

Figure 1.7.2: Significant Figures. How many of the numbers in this display are actually significant? (Public Domain.)

Example 1.7.2

Give the number of significant figures in each measurement.

a. 36.7 m
b. 0.006606 s
c. 2,002 kg
d. 306,490,000 people

Solution

a. By rule 1, all nonzero digits are significant, so this measurement has three significant figures.
b. By rule 4, the first three zeros are not significant, but by rule 2 the zero between the sixes is; therefore, this number has four significant figures.
c. By rule 2, the two zeros between the twos are significant, so this measurement has four significant figures.
d. The four trailing zeros in the number are not significant, but the other five numbers are, so this number has five significant figures.

Exercise 1.7.2

Give the number of significant figures in each measurement.

a. 0.000601 m
b. 65.080 kg

Answer a

three significant figures

Answer b

five significant figures

How are significant figures handled in calculations? It depends on what type of calculation is being performed. If the calculation is an addition or a subtraction, the rule is as follows: limit the reported answer to the rightmost column that all numbers have significant figures in common. For example, if you were to add 1.2 and 4.21, we note that the first number stops its significant figures in the tenths column, while the second number stops its significant figures in the hundredths column. We therefore limit our answer to the tenths column.

$$\begin{array}{l} 1.2 \\ \underline{4.41} \\ 5.61 \end{array}$$

↑ limit final answer to the tenths column: 5.6

We drop the last digit—the 1—because it is not significant to the final answer.

The dropping of positions in sums and differences brings up the topic of rounding. Although there are several conventions, in this text we will adopt the following rule: the final answer should be rounded up if the first dropped digit is 5 or greater, and rounded down if the first dropped digit is less than 5.

$$\begin{array}{l} 77.2 \\ \underline{10.46} \\ 87.66 \\ \quad\uparrow \text{ limit final answer to the tenths column and round up: } 87.7 \end{array}$$

Example 1.7.3

Express the final answer to the proper number of significant figures.

a. 101.2 + 18.702 = ?
b. 202.88 − 1.013 = ?

Solution

a. If we use a calculator to add these two numbers, we would get 119.902. However, most calculators do not understand significant figures, and we need to limit the final answer to the tenths place. Thus, we drop the 02 and report a final answer of 119.9 (rounding down).
b. A calculator would answer 201.867. However, we have to limit our final answer to the hundredths place. Because the first number being dropped is 7, which is greater than 5, we round up and report a final answer of 201.87.

Exercise 1.7.3

Express the answer for

$$3.445 + 90.83 - 72.4$$

to the proper number of significant figures.

Answer

21.9

If the operations being performed are multiplication or division, the rule is as follows: limit the answer to the number of significant figures that the data value with the *least* number of significant figures has. So if we are dividing 23 by 448, which have two and three significant figures respectively, we should limit the final reported answer to two significant figures (the lesser of two and three significant figures):

$$23 \div 448 = 0.051339286 \approx 0.051$$

The same rounding rules apply in multiplication and division as they do in addition and subtraction.

Example 1.7.4: Significant Figures

Express the final answer to the proper number of significant figures.

a. 76.4 × 180.4 = ?
b. 934.9 ÷ 0.00455 = ?

Solution

a. The first number has three significant figures, while the second number has four significant figures. Therefore, we limit our final answer to three significant figures: 76.4 × 180.4 = 13,782.56 = 13,800.
b. The first number has four significant figures, while the second number has three significant figures. Therefore, we limit our final answer to three significant figures: 934.9 ÷ 0.00455 = 205,472.5275… = 205,000.

Exercise 1.7.4

Express the final answer to the proper number of significant figures.

a. 22.4 × 8.314 = ?
b. 1.381 ÷ 6.02 = ?

Answer a

186

Answer b

0.229

As you have probably realized by now, the biggest issue in determining the number of significant figures in a value is the zero. Is the zero significant or not? One way to unambiguously determine whether a zero is significant or not is to write a number in scientific notation. Scientific notation will include zeros in the coefficient of the number *only if they are significant*. Thus, the number 8.666×10^6 has four significant figures. However, the number 8.6660×10^6 has five significant figures. That last zero is significant; if it were not, it would not be written in the coefficient. So, when in doubt about expressing the number of significant figures in a quantity, use scientific notation and include the number of zeros that are truly significant.

Summary

- Significant figures in a quantity indicate the number of known values plus one place that is estimated.
- There are rules for which numbers in a quantity are significant and which are not significant.
- In calculations involving addition and subtraction, limit significant figures based on the rightmost place that all values have in common.
- In calculations involving multiplication and division, limit significant figures to the least number of significant figures in all the data values.

1.8: Converting Units

Learning Objective

- Convert from one unit to another unit of the same type.

In Section 2.2, we showed some examples of how to replace initial units with other units of the same type to get a numerical value that is easier to comprehend. In this section, we will formalize the process.

Consider a simple example: how many feet are there in 4 yards? Most people will almost automatically answer that there are 12 feet in 4 yards. How did you make this determination? Well, if there are 3 feet in 1 yard and there are 4 yards, then there are 4 × 3 = 12 feet in 4 yards.

This is correct, of course, but it is informal. Let us formalize it in a way that can be applied more generally. We know that 1 yard (yd) equals 3 feet (ft):

$$1\,yd = 3\,ft$$

In math, this expression is called an *equality*. The rules of algebra say that you can change (i.e., multiply or divide or add or subtract) the equality (as long as you do not divide by zero) and the new expression will still be an equality. For example, if we divide both sides by 2, we get:

$$\frac{1}{2}\,yd = \frac{3}{2}\,ft$$

We see that one-half of a yard equals 3/2, or one and a half, feet—something we also know to be true—so the above equation is still an equality. Going back to the original equality, suppose we divide both sides of the equation by 1 yard (number **and** unit):

$$\frac{1\,yd}{1\,yd} = \frac{3\,ft}{1\,yd}$$

The expression is still an equality, by the rules of algebra. The left fraction equals 1. It has the same quantity in the numerator and the denominator, so it must equal 1. The quantities in the numerator and denominator cancel, both the number *and* the unit:

$$\frac{1\,yd}{1\,yd} = \frac{3\,ft}{1\,yd}$$

When everything cancels in a fraction, the fraction reduces to 1:

$$1 = \frac{3\,ft}{1\,yd}$$

Conversion Factors

We have an expression that equals 1.

$$\frac{3\,ft}{1\,yd} = 1$$

This is a strange way to write 1, but it makes sense: 3 ft equal 1 yd, so the quantities in the numerator and denominator are the same quantity, just expressed with different units.

The expression

$$\frac{3\,ft}{1\,yd}$$

is called a conversion factor and it is used to formally change the unit of a quantity into another unit. (The process of converting units in such a formal fashion is sometimes called *dimensional analysis* or the *factor label method*.)

To see how this happens, let us start with the original quantity: 4 yd.

Now let us multiply this quantity by 1. When you multiply anything by 1, you do not change the value of the quantity. Rather than multiplying by just 1, let us write 1 as:

$$\frac{3\,ft}{1\,yd}$$

$$4\,yd \times \frac{3\,ft}{1\,yd}$$

The 4 yd term can be thought of as 4yd/1; that is, it can be thought of as a fraction with 1 in the denominator. We are essentially multiplying fractions. If the same thing appears in the numerator and denominator of a fraction, they cancel. In this case, what cancels is the unit *yard*:

$$4\,yd \times \frac{3\,ft}{1\,yd}$$

That is all that we can cancel. Now, multiply and divide all the numbers to get the final answer:

$$\frac{4 \times 3\,ft}{1} = \frac{12\,ft}{1} = 12\,ft$$

Again, we get an answer of 12 ft, just as we did originally. But in this case, we used a more formal procedure that is applicable to a variety of problems.

How many millimeters are in 14.66 m? To answer this, we need to construct a conversion factor between millimeters and meters and apply it correctly to the original quantity. We start with the definition of a millimeter, which is:

$$1\,mm = \frac{1}{1000\,m}$$

The 1/1000 is what the prefix *milli*- means. Most people are more comfortable working without fractions, so we will rewrite this equation by bringing the 1,000 into the numerator of the other side of the equation:

$$1000\,mm = 1\,m$$

Now we construct a conversion factor by dividing one quantity into both sides. But now a question arises: which quantity do we divide by? It turns out that we have two choices, and the two choices will give us different conversion factors, both of which equal 1:

$$\frac{1000\,mm}{1000\,mm} = \frac{1\,m}{1000\,mm}$$

or

$$\frac{1000\,mm}{1\,m} = \frac{1\,m}{1\,m}$$

$$1 = \frac{1\,m}{1000\,mm}$$

or

$$\frac{1000\,mm}{1\,m} = 1$$

Which conversion factor do we use? The answer is based on *what unit you want to get rid of in your initial quantity*. The original unit of our quantity is meters, which we want to convert to millimeters. Because the original unit is assumed to be in the numerator, to get rid of it, we want the meter unit in the *denominator*; then they will cancel. Therefore, we will use the second conversion factor. Canceling units and performing the mathematics, we get:

$$14.66m \times \frac{1000\,mm}{1\,m} = 14660\,mm$$

Note how m cancels, leaving mm, which is the unit of interest.

The ability to construct and apply proper conversion factors is a very powerful mathematical technique in chemistry. You need to master this technique if you are going to be successful in this and future courses.

✓ Example 1.8.1

a. Convert 35.9 kL to liters.
b. Convert 555 nm to meters.

Solution

a. We will use the fact that 1 kL = 1,000 L. Of the two conversion factors that can be defined, the one that will work is 1000L/1kL. Applying this conversion factor, we get:

$$35.9\,kL \times \frac{1000\,L}{1\,kL} = 35,900\,L$$

b. We will use the fact that 1 nm = 1/1,000,000,000 m, which we will rewrite as 1,000,000,000 nm = 1 m, or 10^9 nm = 1 m. Of the two possible conversion factors, the appropriate one has the nm unit in the denominator:

$$\frac{1\,m}{10^9\,nm}$$

Applying this conversion factor, we get:

$$555\,nm \times \frac{1m}{10^9 nm} = 0.000000555\,m = 5.55 \times 10^{-7}\,m$$

In the final step, we expressed the answer in scientific notation.

? Exercise 1.8.1

a. Convert 67.08 μL to liters.
b. Convert 56.8 m to kilometers.

Answer a

6.708×10^{-5} L

Answer b

5.68×10^{-2} km

What if we have a derived unit that is the product of more than one unit, such as m^2? Suppose we want to convert square meters to square centimeters? The key is to remember that m^2 means m × m, which means we have *two* meter units in our derived unit. That means we have to include *two* conversion factors, one for each unit. For example, to convert 17.6 m^2 to square centimeters, we perform the conversion as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 17.6m^2 &= 17.6(m \times m) \times \frac{100cm}{1m} \times \frac{100cm}{1m} \\ &= 176000\,cm \times cm \\ &= 1.76 \times 10^5\,cm^2 \end{aligned} \tag{1.8.1}$$

✓ Example 1.8.2

How many cubic centimeters are in 0.883 m^3?

Solution

With an exponent of 3, we have three length units, so by extension we need to use three conversion factors between meters and centimeters. Thus, we have:

$$0.883m^3 \times \frac{100\ cm}{1\ m} \times \frac{100\ cm}{1\ m} \times \frac{100\ cm}{1\ m} = 883000\ cm^3 = 8.83 \times 10^5\ cm^3$$

You should demonstrate to yourself that the three meter units do indeed cancel.

? Exercise 1.8.2

How many cubic millimeters are present in 0.0923 m^3?

Answer

9.23×10^7 mm^3

Suppose the unit you want to convert is in the denominator of a derived unit—what then? Then, in the conversion factor, the unit you want to remove must be in the *numerator*. This will cancel with the original unit in the denominator and introduce a new unit in the denominator. The following example illustrates this situation.

✓ Example 1.8.3

Convert 88.4 m/min to meters/second.

Solution

We want to change the unit in the denominator from minutes to seconds. Because there are 60 seconds in 1 minute (60 s = 1 min), we construct a conversion factor so that the unit we want to remove, minutes, is in the numerator: 1min/60s. Apply and perform the math:

$$\frac{88.4m}{min} \times \frac{1\ min}{60\ s} = 1.47 \frac{m}{s}$$

Notice how the 88.4 automatically goes in the numerator. That's because any number can be thought of as being in the numerator of a fraction divided by 1.

? Exercise 1.8.3

Convert 0.203 m/min to meters/second.

Answer

0.00338 m/s

or

3.38×10^{-3} m/s

Sometimes there will be a need to convert from one unit with one numerical prefix to another unit with a different numerical prefix. How do we handle those conversions? Well, you could memorize the conversion factors that interrelate all numerical prefixes. Or you can go the easier route: first convert the quantity to the base unit—the unit with no numerical prefix—using the definition of the original prefix. Then, convert the quantity in the base unit to the desired unit using the definition of the second prefix. You can do the conversion in two separate steps or as one long algebraic step. For example, to convert 2.77 kg to milligrams:

$$2.77\ kg \times \frac{1000\ g}{1\ kg} = 2770\ g$$

(convert to the base units of grams)

$$2770\ g \times \frac{1000\ mg}{1\ g} = 2770000\ mg = 2.77 \times 10^6\ mg$$

(convert to desired unit)

Alternatively, it can be done in a single multi-step process:

$$\begin{aligned} 2.77\ \cancel{kg} \times \frac{1000\ \cancel{g}}{1\ \cancel{kg}} \times \frac{1000\, mg}{1\ \cancel{g}} &= 2770000\, mg \\ &= 2.77 \times 10^{6}\, mg \end{aligned} \tag{1.8.2}$$

You get the same answer either way.

✓ Example 1.8.4

How many nanoseconds are in 368.09 μs?

Solution

You can either do this as a one-step conversion from microseconds to nanoseconds or convert to the base unit first and then to the final desired unit. We will use the second method here, showing the two steps in a single line. Using the definitions of the prefixes *micro*- and *nano*-,

$$368.0\, \mu s \times \frac{1\, s}{1000000\, \mu s} \times \frac{1000000000}{1\, s} = 3.6809 \times 10^{5}\, ns$$

? Exercise 1.8.4

How many milliliters are in 607.8 kL?

Answer

6.078 × 10^8 mL

When considering the significant figures of a final numerical answer in a conversion, there is one important case where a number does not impact the number of significant figures in a final answer: the so-called **exact number**. An exact number is a number from a defined relationship, not a measured one. For example, the prefix *kilo*- means 1,000-*exactly* 1,000, no more or no less. Thus, in constructing the conversion factor:

$$\frac{1000\, g}{1\, kg}$$

neither the 1,000 nor the 1 enter into our consideration of significant figures. The numbers in the numerator and denominator are defined exactly by what the prefix *kilo*- means. Another way of thinking about it is that these numbers can be thought of as having an infinite number of significant figures, such as:

$$\frac{1000.0000000000\ldots\ g}{1.0000000000\ldots\ kg}$$

The other numbers in the calculation will determine the number of significant figures in the final answer.

✓ Example 1.8.5

A rectangular plot in a garden has the dimensions 36.7 cm by 128.8 cm. What is the area of the garden plot in square meters? Express your answer in the proper number of significant figures.

Solution

Area is defined as the product of the two dimensions, which we then have to convert to square meters, and express our final answer to the correct number of significant figures—which in this case will be three.

$$36.7\, cm \times 128.8\, cm \times \frac{1\, m}{100\, cm} \times \frac{1\, m}{100\, cm} = 0.472696\, m^{2} = 0.473\, m^{2}$$

The 1 and 100 in the conversion factors do not affect the determination of significant figures because they are exact numbers, defined by the centi- prefix.

Exercise 1.8.5

What is the volume of a block in cubic meters with the dimensions 2.1 cm × 34.0 cm × 118 cm?

Answer

0.0084 m^3

Chemistry is Everywhere: The Gimli Glider

On July 23, 1983, an Air Canada Boeing 767 jet had to glide to an emergency landing at Gimli Industrial Park Airport in Gimli, Manitoba, because it unexpectedly ran out of fuel during flight. There was no loss of life in the course of the emergency landing, only some minor injuries associated in part with the evacuation of the craft after landing. For the remainder of its operational life (the plane was retired in 2008), the aircraft was nicknamed "the Gimli Glider."

The Gimli Glider is the Boeing 767 that ran out of fuel and glided to safety at Gimli Airport. The aircraft ran out of fuel because of confusion over the units used to express the amount of fuel. Source: Photo courtesy of Will F., (CC BY-SA 2.5; Aero Icarus).

The 767 took off from Montreal on its way to Ottawa, ultimately heading for Edmonton, Canada. About halfway through the flight, all the engines on the plane began to shut down because of a lack of fuel. When the final engine cut off, all electricity (which was generated by the engines) was lost; the plane became, essentially, a powerless glider. Captain Robert Pearson was an experienced glider pilot, although he had never flown a glider the size of a 767. First Officer Maurice Quintal quickly determined that the aircraft would not be able make it to Winnipeg, the next large airport. He suggested his old Royal Air Force base at Gimli Station, one of whose runways was still being used as a community airport. Between the efforts of the pilots and the flight crew, they managed to get the airplane safely on the ground (although with buckled landing gear) and all passengers off safely.

What happened? At the time, Canada was transitioning from the older English system to the metric system. The Boeing 767s were the first aircraft whose gauges were calibrated in the metric system of units (liters and kilograms) rather than the English system of units (gallons and pounds). Thus, when the fuel gauge read 22,300, the gauge meant kilograms, but the ground crew mistakenly fueled the plane with 22,300 *pounds* of fuel. This ended up being just less than half of the fuel needed to make the trip, causing the engines to quit about halfway to Ottawa. Quick thinking and extraordinary skill saved the lives of 61 passengers and 8 crew members—an incident that would not have occurred if people were watching their units.

Key Takeaways

- Units can be converted to other units using the proper conversion factors.
- Conversion factors are constructed from equalities that relate two different units.
- Conversions can be a single step or multi-step.
- Unit conversion is a powerful mathematical technique in chemistry that must be mastered.
- Exact numbers do not affect the determination of significant figures.

1.9: Other Units - Temperature and Density

Learning Objective

- Learn about the various temperature scales that are commonly used in chemistry.
- Define density and use it as a conversion factor.

There are other units in chemistry that are important, and we will cover others over the course of the entire book. One of the fundamental quantities in science is temperature. Temperature is a measure of the average amount of energy of motion, or *kinetic energy*, a system contains. Temperatures are expressed using scales that use units called degrees, and there are several temperature scales in use. In the United States, the commonly used temperature scale is the *Fahrenheit scale* (symbolized by °F and spoken as "degrees Fahrenheit"). On this scale, the freezing point of liquid water (the temperature at which liquid water turns to solid ice) is 32°F, and the boiling point of water (the temperature at which liquid water turns to steam) is 212°F.

Science also uses other scales to express temperature. The Celsius scale (symbolized by °C and spoken as "degrees Celsius") is a temperature scale where 0°C is the freezing point of water and 100°C is the boiling point of water; the scale is divided into 100 divisions between these two landmarks and extended higher and lower. By comparing the Fahrenheit and Celsius scales, a conversion between the two scales can be determined:

$$^{\circ}\mathrm{C} = (^{\circ}\mathrm{F} - 32) \times \tfrac{5}{9} \tag{1.9.1}$$

$$^{\circ}\mathrm{F} = \left(^{\circ}\mathrm{C} \times \tfrac{9}{5}\right) + 32 \tag{1.9.2}$$

Example 1.9.1: Conversions

a. What is 98.6 °F in degrees Celsius?
b. What is 25.0 °C in degrees Fahrenheit?

Solution

a. Using Equation 1.9.1, we have

$$\begin{aligned} ^{\circ}C &= (98.6 - 32) \times \frac{5}{9} \\ &= 66.6 \times \frac{5}{9} \\ &= 37.0^{\circ}C \end{aligned}$$

b. Using Equation 1.9.2, we have

$$\begin{aligned} ^{\circ}F &= \left(25.0 \times \frac{9}{5}\right) + 32 \\ &= 45.0 + 32 \\ &= 77.0^{\circ}F \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 1.9.1

a. Convert 0 °F to degrees Celsius.
b. Convert 212 °C to degrees Fahrenheit.

Answer a

−17.8 °C

Answer b

414 °F

The fundamental unit of temperature (another fundamental unit of science, bringing us to four) in SI is the kelvin (K). The Kelvin temperature scale (note that the name of the scale capitalizes the word *Kelvin*, but the unit itself is lowercase) uses degrees that are the same size as the Celsius degree, but the numerical scale is shifted up by 273.15 units. That is, the conversion between the Kelvin and Celsius scales is as follows:

$$K = {}^{\circ}C + 273.15$$

For most purposes, it is acceptable to use 273 instead of 273.15. Note that the Kelvin scale does not use the word *degrees*; a temperature of 295 K is spoken of as "two hundred ninety-five kelvins" and not "two hundred ninety-five degrees Kelvin."

The reason that the Kelvin scale is defined this way is because there exists a minimum possible temperature called absolute zero (zero kelvins). The Kelvin temperature scale is set so that 0 K is absolute zero, and temperature is counted upward from there. Normal room temperature is about 295 K, as seen in the following example.

✓ Example 1.9.2: Room Temperature

If normal room temperature is 72.0°F, what is room temperature in degrees Celsius and kelvin?

Solution

First, we use the formula to determine the temperature in degrees Celsius:

$$\begin{aligned} {}^{\circ}C &= (72.0 - 32) \times \frac{5}{9} \\ &= 40.0 \times \frac{5}{9} \\ &= 22.2^{\circ}C \end{aligned}$$

Then we use the appropriate formula above to determine the temperature in the Kelvin scale:

$$\begin{aligned} K &= 22.2^{\circ}C + 273.15 \\ &= 295.4K \end{aligned}$$

So, room temperature is about 295 K.

? Exercise 1.9.2

What is 98.6°F on the Kelvin scale?

Answer

310.2 K

Figure 1.9.1 compares the three temperature scales. Note that science uses the Celsius and Kelvin scales almost exclusively; virtually no practicing chemist expresses laboratory-measured temperatures with the Fahrenheit scale. In fact, the United States is one of the few countries in the world that still uses the Fahrenheit scale on a daily basis. The other two countries are Liberia and Myanmar (formerly Burma). People driving near the borders of Canada or Mexico may pick up local radio stations on the other side of the border that express the daily weather in degrees Celsius, so do not get confused by their weather reports.

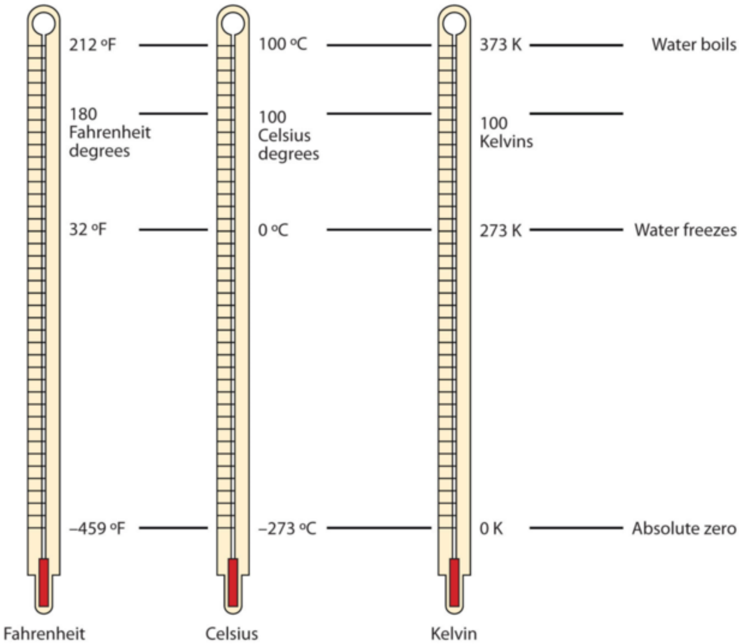


Figure 1.9.1: Fahrenheit, Celsius, and Kelvin Temperatures. A comparison of the three temperature scales.

Density

Density is a physical property that is defined as a substance's mass divided by its volume:

$$density = \frac{mass}{volume} \Rightarrow d = \frac{m}{v}$$

Density is usually a measured property of a substance, so its numerical value affects the significant figures in a calculation. Notice that density is defined in terms of two dissimilar units, mass and volume. That means that density overall has derived units, just like velocity. Common units for density include g/mL, g/cm^3, g/L, kg/L, and even kg/m^3. Densities for some common substances are listed in Table 1.9.1.

Table 1.9.1: Densities of Some Common Substances

Substance	Density (g/mL or g/cm^3)
water	1.0
gold	19.3
mercury	13.6
air	0.0012
cork	0.22–0.26
aluminum	2.7
iron	7.87

Because of how it is defined, density can act as a conversion factor for switching between units of mass and volume. For example, suppose you have a sample of aluminum that has a volume of 7.88 cm^3. How can you determine what mass of aluminum you have without measuring it? You can use the volume to calculate it. If you multiply the given volume by the known density (from Table 1.9.1), the volume units will cancel and leave you with mass units, telling you the mass of the sample:

$$7.88\ \cancel{cm^3} \times \frac{2.7\ g}{\cancel{cm^3}} = 21\ g \text{ of aluminium}$$

where we have limited our answer to two significant figures.

Example 1.9.3: Mercury

What is the mass of 44.6 mL of mercury?

Solution

Use the density from Table 1.9.1 "Densities of Some Common Substances" as a conversion factor to go from volume to mass:

$$44.6\ \cancel{mL} \times \frac{13.6\,g}{\cancel{mL}} = 607\,g$$

The mass of the mercury is 607 g.

Exercise 1.9.3

What is the mass of 25.0 cm^3 of iron?

Answer

197 g

Density can also be used as a conversion factor to convert mass to volume—but care must be taken. We have already demonstrated that the number that goes with density normally goes in the numerator when density is written as a fraction. Take the density of gold, for example:

$$d = 19.3\,g/mL = \frac{19.3\,g}{mL}$$

Although this was not previously pointed out, it can be assumed that there is a 1 in the denominator:

$$d = 19.3\,g/mL = \frac{19.3\,g}{mL}$$

That is, the density value tells us that we have 19.3 grams for every 1 milliliter of volume, and the 1 is an exact number. When we want to use density to convert from mass to volume, the numerator and denominator of density need to be switched—that is, we must take the *reciprocal* of the density. In so doing, we move not only the units, but also the numbers:

$$\frac{1}{d} = \frac{1\,mL}{19.3\,g}$$

This reciprocal density is still a useful conversion factor, but now the mass unit will cancel and the volume unit will be introduced. Thus, if we want to know the volume of 45.9 g of gold, we would set up the conversion as follows:

$$45.9\ \cancel{g} \times \frac{1\,mL}{19.3\ \cancel{g}} = 2.38\,mL$$

Note how the mass units cancel, leaving the volume unit, which is what we are looking for.

Example 1.9.4: Calculating Volume from Density

A cork stopper from a bottle of wine has a mass of 3.78 g. If the density of cork is 0.22 g/cm^3, what is the volume of the cork?

Solution

To use density as a conversion factor, we need to take the reciprocal so that the mass unit of density is in the denominator. Taking the reciprocal, we find:

$$\frac{1}{d} = \frac{1\,cm^3}{0.22\,g}$$

We can use this expression as the conversion factor. So

$$3.78\ \cancel{g} \times \frac{1\ cm^3}{0.22\ \cancel{g}} = 17.2\ cm^3$$

? Exercise 1.9.4

What is the volume of 3.78 g of gold?

Answer

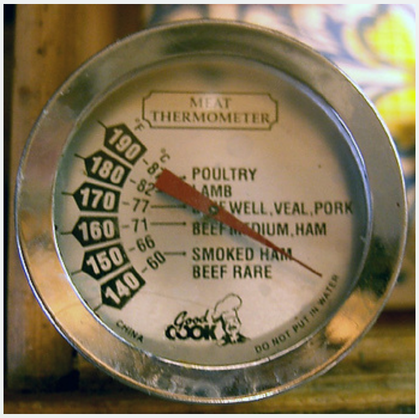
0.196 cm^3

Care must be used with density as a conversion factor. Make sure the mass units are the same, or the volume units are the same, before using density to convert to a different unit. Often, the unit of the given quantity must be first converted to the appropriate unit before applying density as a conversion factor.

Food and Drink Application: Cooking Temperatures

Because degrees Fahrenheit is the common temperature scale in the United States, kitchen appliances, such as ovens, are calibrated in that scale. A cool oven may be only 150°F, while a cake may be baked at 350°F and a chicken roasted at 400°F. The broil setting on many ovens is 500°F, which is typically the highest temperature setting on a household oven.

People who live at high altitudes, typically 2,000 ft above sea level or higher, are sometimes urged to use slightly different cooking instructions on some products, such as cakes and bread, because water boils at a lower temperature the higher in altitude you go, meaning that foods cook slower. For example, in Cleveland water typically boils at 212°F (100°C), but in Denver, the Mile-High City, water boils at about 200°F (93.3°C), which can significantly lengthen cooking times. Good cooks need to be aware of this.



A meat thermometer with a dial. Notice the markings for Fahrenheit (outer scale) and Celsius (inner scale) temperatures. Recipes for cooking food in an oven can use very different numbers, depending on the country you're in. (CC BY2.0 Bev Sykes)

At the other end is pressure cooking. A pressure cooker is a closed vessel that allows steam to build up additional pressure, which increases the temperature at which water boils. A good pressure cooker can get to temperatures as high as 252°F (122°C); at these temperatures, food cooks much faster than it normally would. Great care must be used with pressure cookers because of the high pressure and high temperature. (When a pressure cooker is used to sterilize medical instruments, it is called an *autoclave*.)

Other countries use the Celsius scale for everyday purposes. Therefore, oven dials in their kitchens are marked in degrees Celsius. It can be confusing for US cooks to use ovens abroad—a 425°F oven in the United States is equivalent to a 220°C oven in other countries. These days, many oven thermometers are marked with both temperature scales.

Key Takeaways

- Chemistry uses the Celsius and Kelvin scales to express temperatures.
- A temperature on the Kelvin scale is the Celsius temperature plus 273.15.
- The minimum possible temperature is absolute zero and is assigned 0 K on the Kelvin scale.
- Density relates the mass and volume of a substance.
- Density can be used to calculate volume from a given mass or mass from a given volume.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

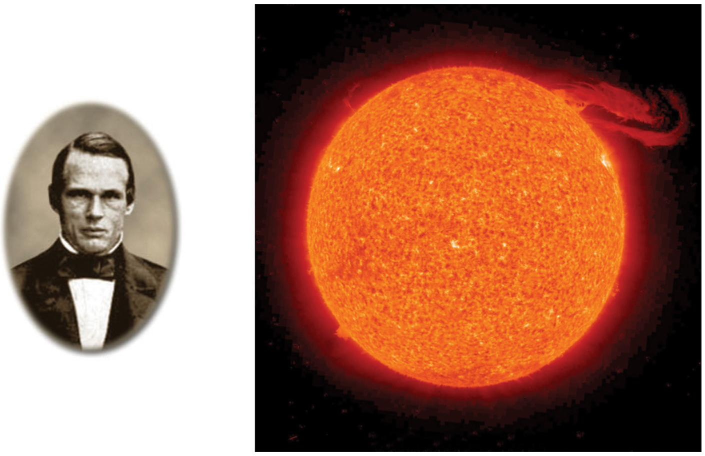
2: Module 2

The basic building block of all matter is the atom. Curiously, the idea of atoms was first proposed in the fifth century BCE, when the Greek philosophers Leucippus and Democritus proposed their existence in a surprisingly modern fashion. However, their ideas never took hold among their contemporaries, and it wasn't until the early 1800s that evidence amassed to make scientists reconsider the idea. Today, the concept of the atom is central to the study of matter.

2.1: Prelude to Atoms, Molecules, and Ions

Although not an SI unit, the angstrom (Å) is a useful unit of length. It is one ten-billionth of a meter, or 10^{-10} m. Why is it a useful unit? The ultimate particles that compose all matter are about 10^{-10} m in size, or about 1 Å. This makes the angstrom a natural—though not approved—unit for describing these particles.

The angstrom unit is named after Anders Jonas Ångström, a nineteenth-century Swedish physicist. Ångström's research dealt with light being emitted by glowing objects, including the sun. Ångström studied the brightness of the different colors of light that the sun emitted and was able to deduce that the sun is composed of the same kinds of matter that are present on the earth. By extension, we now know that all matter throughout the universe is similar to the matter that exists on our own planet.



Anders Jonas Ångstrom, a Swedish physicist, studied the light coming from the sun. His contributions to science were sufficient to have a tiny unit of length named after him, the angstrom, which is one ten-billionth of a meter.

Source: Photo of the sun courtesy of NASA's Solar Dynamics Observatory.

2.2: Atomic Theory

Learning Objectives

- State the modern atomic theory.
- Learn how atoms are constructed.

The smallest piece of an element that maintains the identity of that element is called an atom. Individual atoms are extremely small. It would take about fifty million atoms in a row to make a line that is 1 cm long. The period at the end of a printed sentence has several million atoms in it. Atoms are so small that it is difficult to believe that all matter is made from atoms—but it is.

The concept that atoms play a fundamental role in chemistry is formalized by the modern atomic theory, first stated by John Dalton, an English scientist, in 1808. It consists of three parts:

1. All matter is composed of atoms.
2. Atoms of the same element are the same; atoms of different elements are different.
3. Atoms combine in whole-number ratios to form compounds.

These concepts form the basis of chemistry. Although the word *atom* comes from a Greek word that means "indivisible," we understand now that atoms themselves are composed of smaller parts called *subatomic particles*. The first part to be discovered was the electron, a tiny subatomic particle with a negative charge. It is often represented as e^{-}, with the right superscript showing the negative charge. Later, two larger particles were discovered. The proton is a more massive (but still tiny) subatomic particle with a positive charge, represented as p^{+}. The neutron is a subatomic particle with about the same mass as a proton, but no charge. It is represented as either n or n^{0}. We now know that all atoms of all elements are composed of electrons, protons, and (with one exception) neutrons. Table $2.2.1$ summarizes the properties of these three subatomic particles.

Table $2.2.1$: Properties of the Three Subatomic Particles

Name	Symbol	Mass (approx.; kg)	Charge
Proton	p^{+}	1.6×10^{-27}	1+
Neutron	n, n^{0}	1.6×10^{-27}	none
Electron	e^{-}	9.1×10^{-31}	1−

How are these particles arranged in atoms? They are not arranged at random. Experiments by Ernest Rutherford in England in the 1910s pointed to a nuclear model with atoms that has the protons and neutrons in a central nucleus with the electrons in orbit about the nucleus. The relatively massive protons and neutrons are collected in the center of an atom, in a region called the nucleus of the atom (plural *nuclei*). The electrons are outside the nucleus and spend their time orbiting in space about the nucleus. (Figure $2.2.1$).

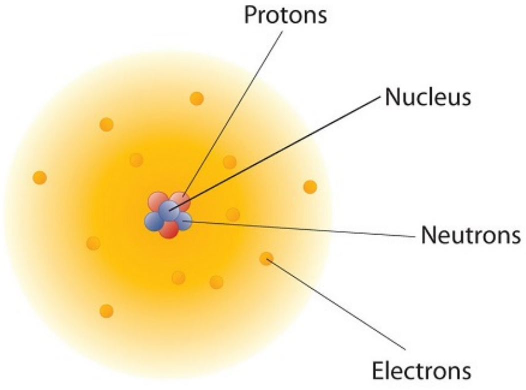


Figure $2.2.1$: The Structure of the Atom. Atoms have protons and neutrons in the center, making the nucleus, while the electrons orbit the nucleus.

The modern atomic theory states that atoms of one element are the same, while atoms of different elements are different. What makes atoms of different elements different? The fundamental characteristic that all atoms of the same element share is the *number* *of protons*. All atoms of hydrogen have one and only one proton in the nucleus; all atoms of iron have 26 protons in the nucleus. This number of protons is so important to the identity of an atom that it is called the atomic number. The number of protons in an atom is the atomic number of the element. Thus, hydrogen has an atomic number of 1, while iron has an atomic number of 26. Each element has its own characteristic atomic number.

Atoms of the same element can have different numbers of neutrons, however. Atoms of the same element (i.e., atoms with the same number of protons) with different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. Most naturally occurring elements exist as isotopes. For example, most hydrogen atoms have a single proton in their nucleus. However, a small number (about one in a million) of hydrogen atoms have a proton and a neutron in their nuclei. This particular isotope of hydrogen is called deuterium. A very rare form of hydrogen has one proton and two neutrons in the nucleus; this isotope of hydrogen is called tritium. The sum of the number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus is called the mass number of the isotope.

Neutral atoms have the same number of electrons as they have protons, so their overall charge is zero. However, as we shall see later, this will not always be the case.

✓ Example 2.2.1

a. The most common carbon atoms have six protons and six neutrons in their nuclei. What are the atomic number and the mass number of these carbon atoms?
b. An isotope of uranium has an atomic number of 92 and a mass number of 235. What are the number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus of this atom?

Solution

a. If a carbon atom has six protons in its nucleus, its atomic number is 6. If it also has six neutrons in the nucleus, then the mass number is 6 + 6, or 12.
b. If the atomic number of uranium is 92, then that is the number of protons in the nucleus. Because the mass number is 235, then the number of neutrons in the nucleus is 235 − 92, or 143.

? Exercise 2.2.1

The number of protons in the nucleus of a tin atom is 50, while the number of neutrons in the nucleus is 68. What are the atomic number and the mass number of this isotope?

Answer

Atomic number = 50, mass number = 118

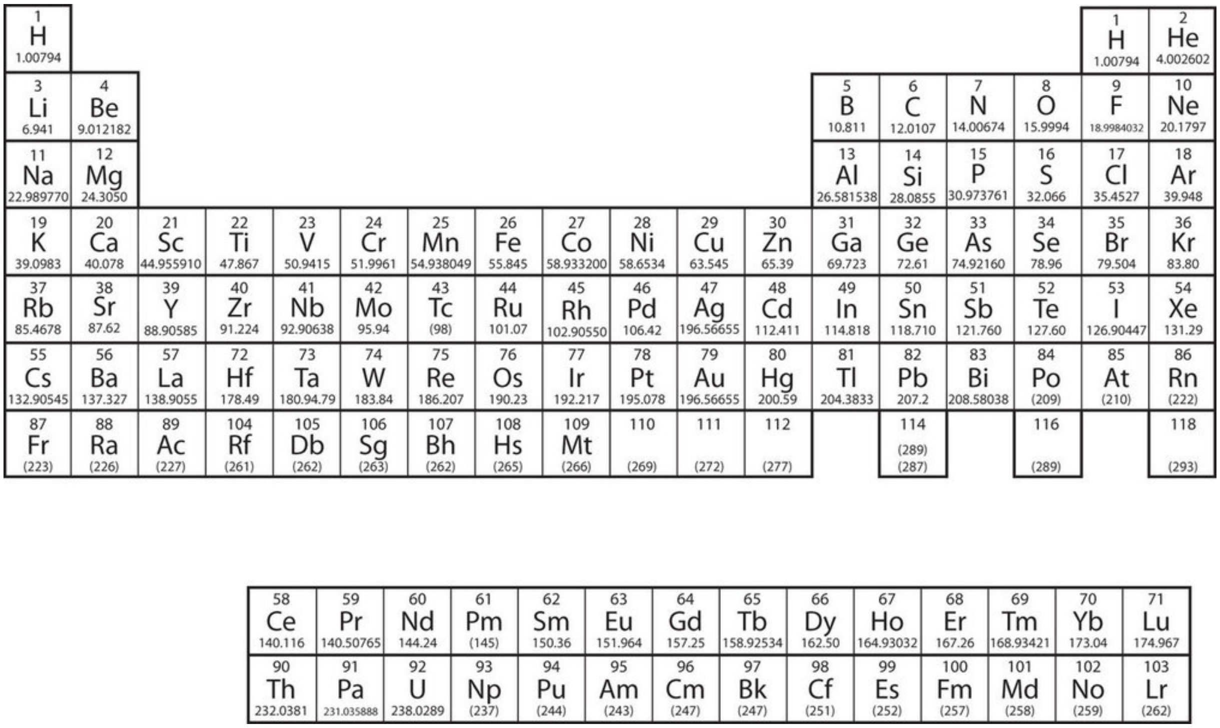
When referring to an atom, we simply use the element's name: the term *sodium* refers to the element as well as an atom of sodium. But it can be unwieldy to use the name of elements all the time. Instead, chemistry defines a symbol for each element. The atomic symbol is a one- or two-letter representation of the name of an element. By convention, the first letter of an element's symbol is always capitalized, while the second letter (if present) is lowercase. Thus, the symbol for hydrogen is H, the symbol for sodium is Na, and the symbol for nickel is Ni. Most symbols come from the English name of the element, although some symbols come from an element's Latin name. (The symbol for sodium, Na, comes from its Latin name, *natrium*.) Table 2.2.2 lists some common elements and their symbols. You should memorize the symbols in Table 2.2.2, as this is how we will be representing elements throughout chemistry.

Table 2.2.2: Names and Symbols of Common Elements

Element Name	Symbol	Element Name	Symbol
Aluminum	Al	Mercury	Hg
Argon	Ar	Molybdenum	Mo
Arsenic	As	Neon	Ne
Barium	Ba	Nickel	Ni
Beryllium	Be	Nitrogen	N

Element Name	Symbol	Element Name	Symbol
Bismuth	Bi	Oxygen	O
Boron	B	Palladium	Pd
Bromine	Br	Phosphorus	P
Calcium	Ca	Platinum	Pt
Carbon	C	Potassium	K
Chlorine	Cl	Radium	Ra
Chromium	Cr	Radon	Rn
Cobalt	Co	Rubidium	Rb
Copper	Cu	Scandium	Sc
Fluorine	F	Selenium	Se
Gallium	Ga	Silicon	Si
Germanium	Ge	Silver	Ag
Gold	Au	Sodium	Na
Helium	He	Strontium	Sr
Hydrogen	H	Sulfur	S
Iodine	I	Tantalum	Ta
Iridium	Ir	Tin	Sn
Iron	Fe	Titanium	Ti
Krypton	Kr	Tungsten	W
Lead	Pb	Uranium	U
Lithium	Li	Xenon	Xe
Magnesium	Mg	Zinc	Zn
Manganese	Mn	Zirconium	Zr

The elements are grouped together in a special chart called the periodic table of all the elements. A simple periodic table is shown in Figure $2.2.2$, while one may view a more extensive periodic table from another source. The elements on the periodic table are listed in order of ascending atomic number. The periodic table has a special shape that will become important to us when we consider the organization of electrons in atoms (Chapter 8). One immediate use of the periodic table helps us identify metals and nonmetals. Nonmetals are in the upper right-hand corner of the periodic table, on one side of the heavy line splitting the right-side part of the chart. All other elements are metals.



1 H 1.00794																1 H 1.00794	2 He 4.002602
3 Li 6.941	4 Be 9.012182											5 B 10.811	6 C 12.0107	7 N 14.00674	8 O 15.9994	9 F 18.9984032	10 Ne 20.1797
11 Na 22.989770	12 Mg 24.3050											13 Al 26.581538	14 Si 28.0855	15 P 30.973761	16 S 32.066	17 Cl 35.4527	18 Ar 39.948
19 K 39.0983	20 Ca 40.078	21 Sc 44.955910	22 Ti 47.867	23 V 50.9415	24 Cr 51.9961	25 Mn 54.938049	26 Fe 55.845	27 Co 58.933200	28 Ni 58.6534	29 Cu 63.545	30 Zn 65.39	31 Ga 69.723	32 Ge 72.61	33 As 74.92160	34 Se 78.96	35 Br 79.504	36 Kr 83.80
37 Rb 85.4678	38 Sr 87.62	39 Y 88.90585	40 Zr 91.224	41 Nb 92.90638	42 Mo 95.94	43 Tc (98)	44 Ru 101.07	45 Rh 102.90550	46 Pd 106.42	47 Ag 196.56655	48 Cd 112.411	49 In 114.818	50 Sn 118.710	51 Sb 121.760	52 Te 127.60	53 I 126.90447	54 Xe 131.29
55 Cs 132.90545	56 Ba 137.327	57 La 138.9055	72 Hf 178.49	73 Ta 180.94.79	74 W 183.84	75 Re 186.207	76 Os 190.23	77 Ir 192.217	78 Pt 195.078	79 Au 196.56655	80 Hg 200.59	81 Tl 204.3833	82 Pb 207.2	83 Bi 208.58038	84 Po (209)	85 At (210)	86 Rn (222)
87 Fr (223)	88 Ra (226)	89 Ac (227)	104 Rf (261)	105 Db (262)	106 Sg (263)	107 Bh (262)	108 Hs (265)	109 Mt (266)	110 (269)	111 (272)	112 (277)		114 (289) (287)		116 (289)		118 (293)

58 Ce 140.116	59 Pr 140.50765	60 Nd 144.24	61 Pm (145)	62 Sm 150.36	63 Eu 151.964	64 Gd 157.25	65 Tb 158.92534	66 Dy 162.50	67 Ho 164.93032	68 Er 167.26	69 Tm 168.93421	70 Yb 173.04	71 Lu 174.967
90 Th 232.0381	91 Pa 231.035888	92 U 238.0289	93 Np (237)	94 Pu (244)	95 Am (243)	96 Cm (247)	97 Bk (247)	98 Cf (251)	99 Es (252)	100 Fm (257)	101 Md (258)	102 No (259)	103 Lr (262)

Figure 2.2.1: A Simple Periodic Table

There is an easy way to represent isotopes using the atomic symbols. We use the construction:

$${}^{\text{A}}_{\text{Z}}\text{X}$$

where X is the symbol of the element, A is the mass number, and Z is the atomic number. Thus, for the isotope of carbon that has 6 protons and 6 neutrons, the symbol is:

$${}^{12}_{6}\text{C}$$

where C is the symbol for the element, 6 represents the atomic number, and 12 represents the mass number.

✓ Example 2.2.2

a. What is the symbol for an isotope of uranium that has an atomic number of 92 and a mass number of 235?
b. How many protons and neutrons are in ${}^{56}_{26}\text{Fe}$

Solution

a. The symbol for this isotope is ${}^{235}_{92}\text{U}$
b. This iron atom has 26 protons and 56 − 26 = 30 neutrons.

? Exercise 2.2.2

How many protons are in ${}^{23}_{11}\text{Na}$

Answer

11 protons

It is also common to state the mass number after the name of an element to indicate a particular isotope. *Carbon-12* represents an isotope of carbon with 6 protons and 6 neutrons, while *uranium-238* is an isotope of uranium that has 146 neutrons.

Key Takeaways

- Chemistry is based on the modern atomic theory, which states that all matter is composed of atoms.
- Atoms themselves are composed of protons, neutrons, and electrons.
- Each element has its own atomic number, which is equal to the number of protons in its nucleus.
- Isotopes of an element contain different numbers of neutrons.
- Elements are represented by an atomic symbol.
- The periodic table is a chart that organizes all the elements.

2.3: Organization of Electrons in Atoms

Learning Objectives

- Learn how electrons are organized within atoms.
- Represent the organization of electrons by an electron configuration.

Now that you know that electrons have quantum numbers, how are they arranged in atoms? The key to understanding electronic arrangement is summarized in the **Pauli exclusion principle:** no two electrons in an atom can have the same set of four quantum numbers. This dramatically limits the number of electrons that can exist in a shell or a subshell.

Electrons are typically organized around an atom by starting at the lowest possible quantum numbers first, which are the shells-subshells with lower energies. Consider H, an atom with a single electron only. Under normal conditions, the single electron would go into the n = 1 shell, which has only a single s subshell with one orbital (because m_ℓ can equal only 0). The convention is to label the shell-subshell combination with the number of the shell and the letter that represents the subshell. Thus, the electron goes in the 1s shell-subshell combination. It is usually not necessary to specify the m_ℓ or m_s quantum numbers, but for the H atom, the electron has m_ℓ = 0 (the only possible value) and an m_s of either +1/2 or −1/2.

The He atom has two electrons. The second electron can also go into the 1s shell-subshell combination, but only if its spin quantum number is different from the first electron's spin quantum number. Thus, the sets of quantum numbers for the two electrons are {1, 0, 0, +1/2} and {1, 0, 0, −1/2}. Notice that the overall set is different for the two electrons, as required by the Pauli exclusion principle.

The next atom is Li, with three electrons. However, now the Pauli exclusion principle implies that we cannot put that electron in the 1s shell-subshell because no matter how we try, this third electron would have the same set of four quantum numbers as one of the first two electrons. So this third electron must be assigned to a different shell-subshell combination. However, the n = 1 shell doesn't have another subshell; it is restricted to having just ℓ = 0, or an s subshell. Therefore, this third electron has to be assigned to the n = 2 shell, which has an s (ℓ = 0) subshell and a p (ℓ = 1) subshell. Again, we usually start with the lowest quantum number, so this third electron is assigned to the 2s shell-subshell combination of quantum numbers.

The Pauli exclusion principle has the net effect of limiting the number of electrons that can be assigned a shell-subshell combination of quantum numbers. For example, in any s subshell, no matter what the shell number, there can be a maximum of only two electrons. Once the s subshell is filled up, any additional electrons must go to another subshell in the shell (if it exists), or to a higher-numbered shell. A similar analysis shows that a p subshell can hold a maximum of six electrons. A d subshell can hold a maximum of 10 electrons, while an f subshell can have a maximum of 14 electrons. By limiting subshells to these maxima, we can distribute the available electrons to their shells and subshells.

✓ Example 2.3.1: Carbon Atoms

How would the six electrons for C be assigned to the n and ℓ quantum numbers?

Solution

The first two electrons go into the 1s shell-subshell combination. Two additional electrons can go into the 2s shell-subshell, but now this subshell is filled with the maximum number of electrons. The n = 2 shell also has a p subshell, so the remaining two electrons can go into the 2p subshell. The 2p subshell is not completely full because it can hold a maximum of six electrons.

? Exercise 2.3.1: Sodium Atoms

How would the 11 electrons for Na be assigned to the n and ℓ quantum numbers?

Answer

two 1s electrons, two 2s electrons, six 2p electrons, and one 3s electron

Now that we see how electrons are partitioned among the shells and subshells, we need a more concise way of communicating this partitioning. Chemists use an **electron configuration** to represent the organization of electrons in shells and subshells in an atom.

An electron configuration simply lists the shell and subshell labels, with a right superscript giving the number of electrons in that subshell. The shells and subshells are listed in the order of filling.

For example, an H atom has a single electron in the 1s subshell. Its electron configuration is

$$\mathrm{H{:}\ 1s^1}$$

The He atom has two electrons in the 1s subshell. Its electron configuration is

$$\mathrm{He{:}\ 1s^2}$$

The three electrons for Li are arranged in the 1s subshell (two electrons) and the 2s subshell (one electron). The electron configuration of Li is

$$\mathrm{Li{:}\ 1s^2 2s^1}$$

The Be atom has four electrons, two in the 1s subshell and two in the 2s subshell. Its electron configuration is

$$\mathrm{Be{:}\ 1s^2 2s^2}$$

Now that the 2s subshell is filled, electrons in larger atoms must go into the 2p subshell, which can hold a maximum of six electrons. The next six elements progressively fill up the 2p subshell:

- B: $1s^22s^22p^1$
- C: $1s^22s^22p^2$
- N: $1s^22s^22p^3$
- O: $1s^22s^22p^4$
- F: $1s^22s^22p^5$
- Ne: $1s^22s^22p^6$

Now that the 2p subshell is filled (all possible subshells in the n = 2 shell), the next electron for the next-larger atom must go into the n = 3 shell, s subshell.

✓ Example 2.3.2: Sodium

What is the electron configuration for Na, which has 11 electrons?

Solution

The first two electrons occupy the 1s subshell. The next two occupy the 2s subshell, while the next six electrons occupy the 2p subshell. This gives us 10 electrons so far, with 1 electron left. This last electron goes into the n = 3 shell, s subshell. Thus, the electron configuration of Na is $1s^22s^22p^63s^1$.

? Exercise 2.3.2: Magnesium

What is the electron configuration for Mg, which has 12 electrons?

Answer

$1s^22s^22p^63s^2$

For larger atoms, the electron arrangement becomes more complicated. This is because after the 3p subshell is filled, filling the 4s subshell first actually leads to a lesser overall energy than filling the 3d subshell. Recall that while the principal quantum number largely dictates the energy of an electron, the angular momentum quantum number also has an impact on energy; by the time we get to the 3d and 4s subshells, we see overlap in the filling of the shells. Thus, after the 3p subshell is completely filled (which occurs for Ar), the next electron for K occupies the 4s subshell, not the 3d subshell:

$$\mathrm{K{:}\ 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^1,}$$

not

$$\mathrm{K{:}\ 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 3d^1}$$

For larger and larger atoms, the order of filling the shells and subshells seems to become even more complicated. There are some useful ways to remember the order, like that shown in Figure 2.3.1. If you follow the arrows in order, they pass through the subshells in the order that they are filled with electrons in larger atoms. Initially, the order is the same as the expected shell-subshell order, but for larger atoms, there is some shifting around of the principal quantum numbers. However, Figure 2.3.1 gives a valid ordering of filling subshells with electrons for most atoms.

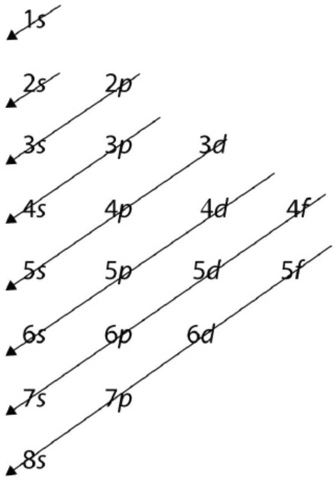


Figure 2.3.1 Electron Shell Filling Order. Starting with the top arrow, follow each arrow. The subshells you reach along each arrow give the ordering of filling of subshells in larger atoms. The n = 5 and higher shells have more subshells, but only those subshells that are needed to accommodate the electrons of the known elements are given.

The electron shell filling order goes as follows: 1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 4s, 3d, 4p, 5s, 4d, 5p, 6s, 4f, 5d, 6p, 7s, 5f, 6d, 7p, then 8s.

✓ Example 2.3.3: Tin

What is the predicted electron configuration for Sn, which has 50 electrons?

Solution

We will follow the chart in Figure 8.4., until we can accommodate 50 electrons in the subshells in the proper order: Sn: $1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^64s^23d^{10}4p^65s^24d^{10}5p^2$

Verify by adding the superscripts, which indicate the number of electrons: 2 + 2 + 6 + 2 + 6 + 2 + 10 + 6 + 2 + 10 + 2 = 50, so we have placed all 50 electrons in subshells in the proper order.

? Exercise 2.3.3: Barium

What is the electron configuration for Ba, which has 56 electrons?

Answer

$1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^64s^23d^{10}4p^65s^24d^{10}5p^66s^2$

As the previous example demonstrated, electron configurations can get fairly long. An **abbreviated electron configuration** uses one of the elements from the last column of the periodic table, which contains the noble gases, to represent the core of electrons up to that element. Then, the remaining electrons are listed explicitly. For example, the abbreviated electron configuration for Li, which has three electrons, would be

$$\text{Li: [He]}2s^1$$

where [He] represents the two-electron core that is equivalent to He's electron configuration. The square brackets represent the electron configuration of a noble gas. This is not much of an abbreviation. However, consider the abbreviated electron configuration for W, which has 74 electrons:

$$\text{W: [Xe]}6s^24f^{14}5d^4$$

This is a significant simplification over an explicit listing of all 74 electrons. So for larger elements, the abbreviated electron configuration can be a very useful shorthand.

✓ Example 2.3.4: Phosphorus

What is the abbreviated electron configuration for P, which has 15 electrons?

Solution

With 15 electrons, the electron configuration of P is

$$\text{P: } 1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^3$$

The first immediate noble gas is Ne, which has an electron configuration of $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$. Using the electron configuration of Ne to represent the first 10 electrons, the abbreviated electron configuration of P is

$$\text{P: } [\text{Ne}] 3s^2 3p^3$$

? Exercise 2.3.4: Rubidium

What is the abbreviated electron configuration for Rb, which has 37 electrons?

Answer

$[\text{Kr}] 5s^1$

There are some exceptions to the rigorous filling of subshells by electrons. In many cases, an electron goes from a higher-numbered shell to a lower-numbered, but later-filled, subshell to fill the later-filled subshell. One example is Ag. With 47 electrons, its electron configuration is predicted to be

$$\text{Ag: } [\text{Kr}] 5s^2 4d^9$$

However, experiments have shown that the electron configuration is actually

$$\text{Ag: } [\text{Kr}] 5s^1 4d^{10}$$

This, then, qualifies as an exception to our expectations. At this point, you do not need to memorize the exceptions; but if you come across one, understand that it is an exception to the normal rules of filling subshells with electrons, which can happen.

Summary

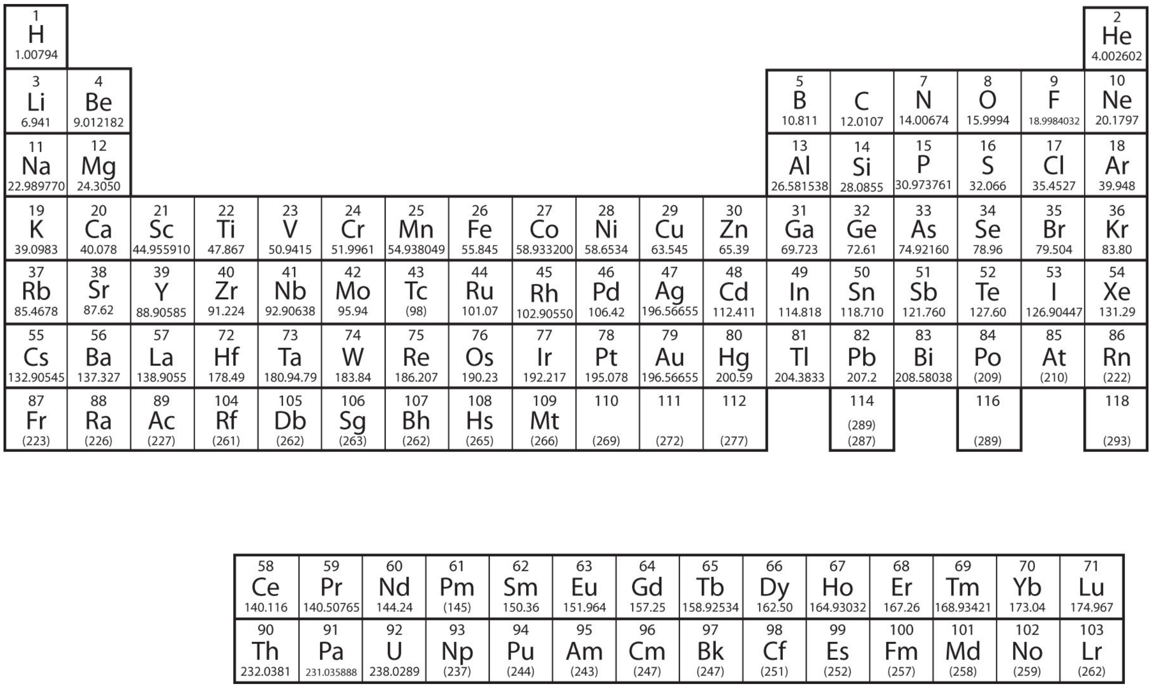
The Pauli exclusion principle limits the number of electrons in the subshells and shells. Electrons in larger atoms fill shells and subshells in a regular pattern that can be followed. Electron configurations are a shorthand method of indicating what subshells electrons occupy in atoms. Abbreviated electron configurations are a simpler way of representing electron configurations for larger atoms. Exceptions to the strict filling of subshells with electrons do occur.

2.4: Electronic Structure and the Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

- Relate the electron configurations of the elements to the shape of the periodic table.
- Determine the expected electron configuration of an element by its place on the periodic table.

In Chapter 3, we introduced the periodic table as a tool for organizing the known chemical elements. A periodic table is shown in Figure $2.4.1$. The elements are listed by atomic number (the number of protons in the nucleus), and elements with similar chemical properties are grouped together in columns.



1 H 1.00794																	2 He 4.002602
3 Li 6.941	4 Be 9.012182											5 B 10.811	C 12.0107	7 N 14.00674	8 O 15.9994	9 F 18.9984032	10 Ne 20.1797
11 Na 22.989770	12 Mg 24.3050											13 Al 26.581538	14 Si 28.0855	15 P 30.973761	16 S 32.066	17 Cl 35.4527	18 Ar 39.948
19 K 39.0983	20 Ca 40.078	21 Sc 44.955910	22 Ti 47.867	23 V 50.9415	24 Cr 51.9961	25 Mn 54.938049	26 Fe 55.845	27 Co 58.933200	28 Ni 58.6534	29 Cu 63.545	30 Zn 65.39	31 Ga 69.723	32 Ge 72.61	33 As 74.92160	34 Se 78.96	35 Br 79.504	36 Kr 83.80
37 Rb 85.4678	38 Sr 87.62	39 Y 88.90585	40 Zr 91.224	41 Nb 92.90638	42 Mo 95.94	43 Tc (98)	44 Ru 101.07	45 Rh 102.90550	46 Pd 106.42	47 Ag 196.56655	48 Cd 112.411	49 In 114.818	50 Sn 118.710	51 Sb 121.760	52 Te 127.60	53 I 126.90447	54 Xe 131.29
55 Cs 132.90545	56 Ba 137.327	57 La 138.9055	72 Hf 178.49	73 Ta 180.94.79	74 W 183.84	75 Re 186.207	76 Os 190.23	77 Ir 192.217	78 Pt 195.078	79 Au 196.56655	80 Hg 200.59	81 Tl 204.3833	82 Pb 207.2	83 Bi 208.58038	84 Po (209)	85 At (210)	86 Rn (222)
87 Fr (223)	88 Ra (226)	89 Ac (227)	104 Rf (261)	105 Db (262)	106 Sg (263)	107 Bh (262)	108 Hs (265)	109 Mt (266)	110 (269)	111 (272)	112 (277)		114 (289) (287)		116 (289)		118 (293)

58 Ce 140.116	59 Pr 140.50765	60 Nd 144.24	61 Pm (145)	62 Sm 150.36	63 Eu 151.964	64 Gd 157.25	65 Tb 158.92534	66 Dy 162.50	67 Ho 164.93032	68 Er 167.26	69 Tm 168.93421	70 Yb 173.04	71 Lu 174.967
90 Th 232.0381	91 Pa 231.035888	92 U 238.0289	93 Np (237)	94 Pu (244)	95 Am (243)	96 Cm (247)	97 Bk (247)	98 Cf (251)	99 Es (252)	100 Fm (257)	101 Md (258)	102 No (259)	103 Lr (262)

Figure $2.4.1$: The Periodic Table

Why does the periodic table have the structure it does? The answer is rather simple, if you understand electron configurations, the shape of the periodic table mimics the filling of the subshells with electrons.

> *The shape of the periodic table mimics the filling of the subshells with electrons.*

Let us start with H and He. Their electron configurations are $1s^1$ and $1s^2$, respectively; with He, the n = 1 shell is filled. These two elements make up the first row of the periodic table (Figure $2.4.2$)

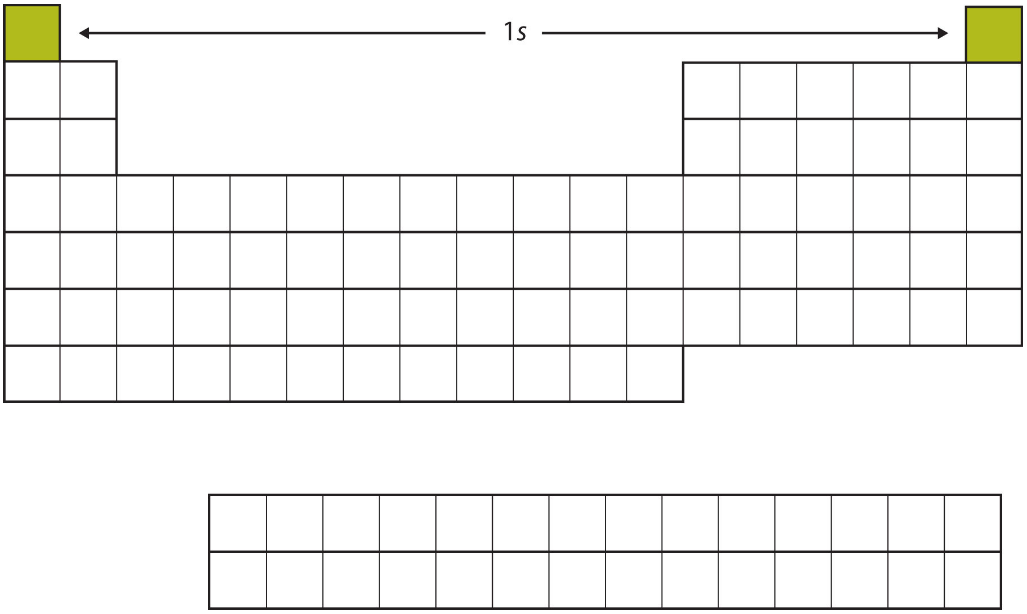


Figure 2.4.2: The 1s Subshell. H and He represent the filling of the 1s subshell.

The next two electrons, for Li and Be, would go into the 2*s* subshell. Figure 2.4.3 shows that these two elements are adjacent on the periodic table.

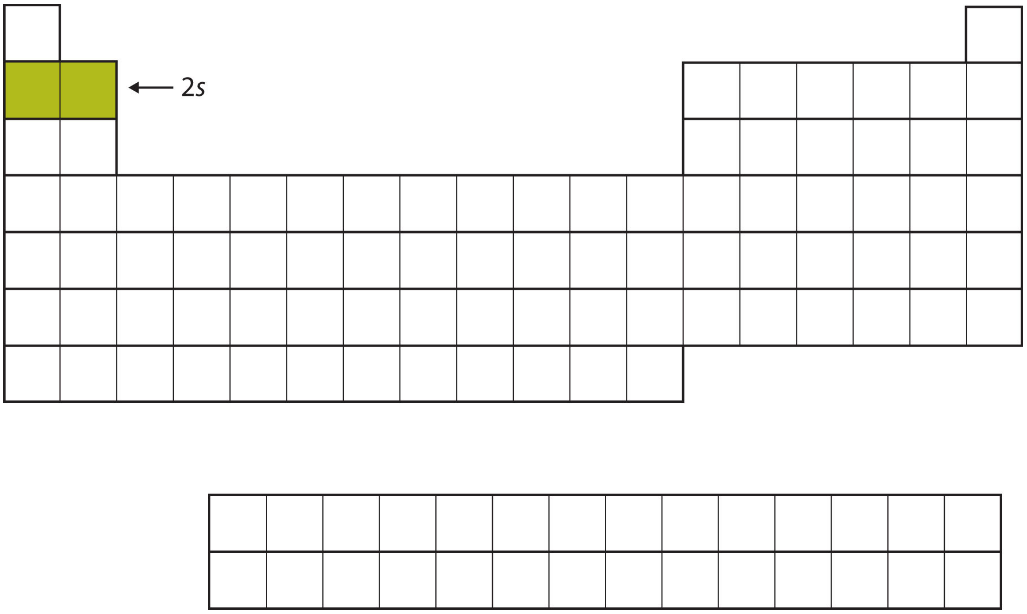


Figure 2.4.3: The 2s Subshell. In Li and Be, the 2s subshell is being filled.

For the next six elements, the 2*p* subshell is being occupied with electrons. On the right side of the periodic table, these six elements (B through Ne) are grouped together (Figure 2.4.4).

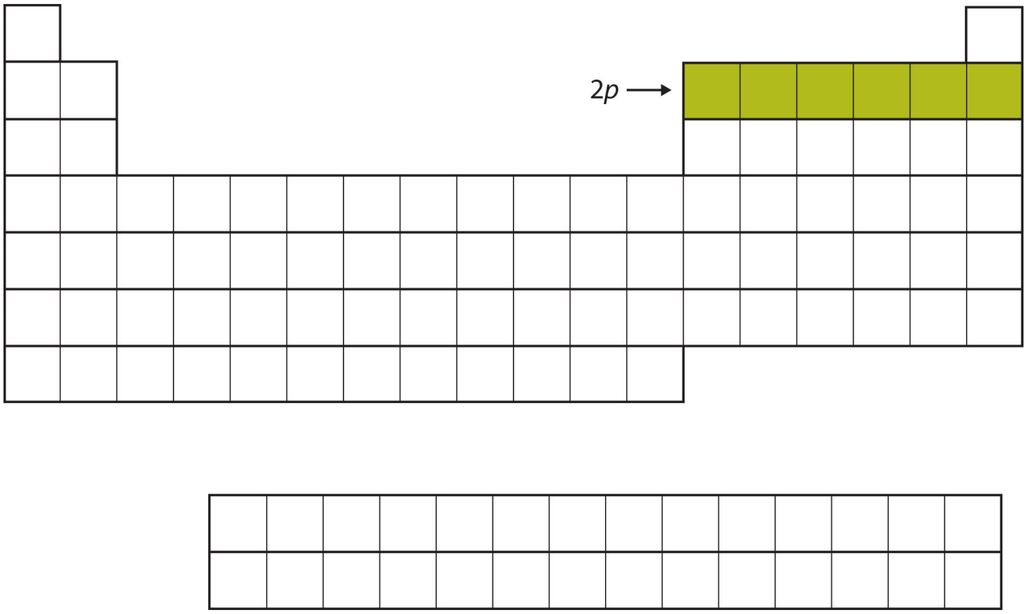


Figure 2.4.4: The 2p Subshell. For B through Ne, the 2p subshell is being occupied.

The next subshell to be filled is the 3*s* subshell. The elements coinciding this subshell being filled, Na and Mg, are back on the left side of the periodic table (Figure 2.4.5).

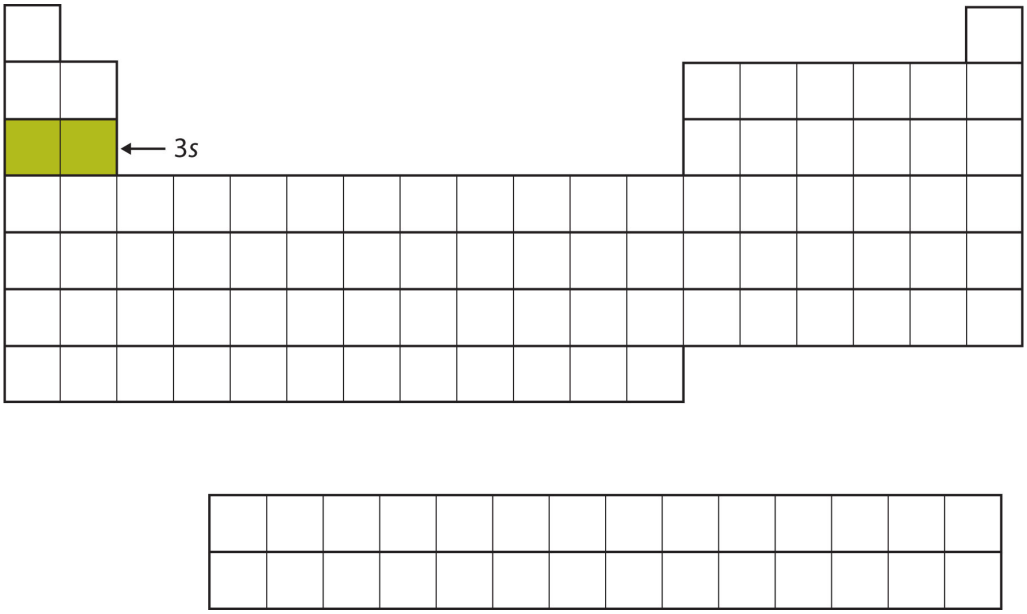


Figure 2.4.5: The 3s Subshell. Now the 3s subshell is being occupied.

Next, the 3*p* subshell is filled with the next six elements (Figure 2.4.6).

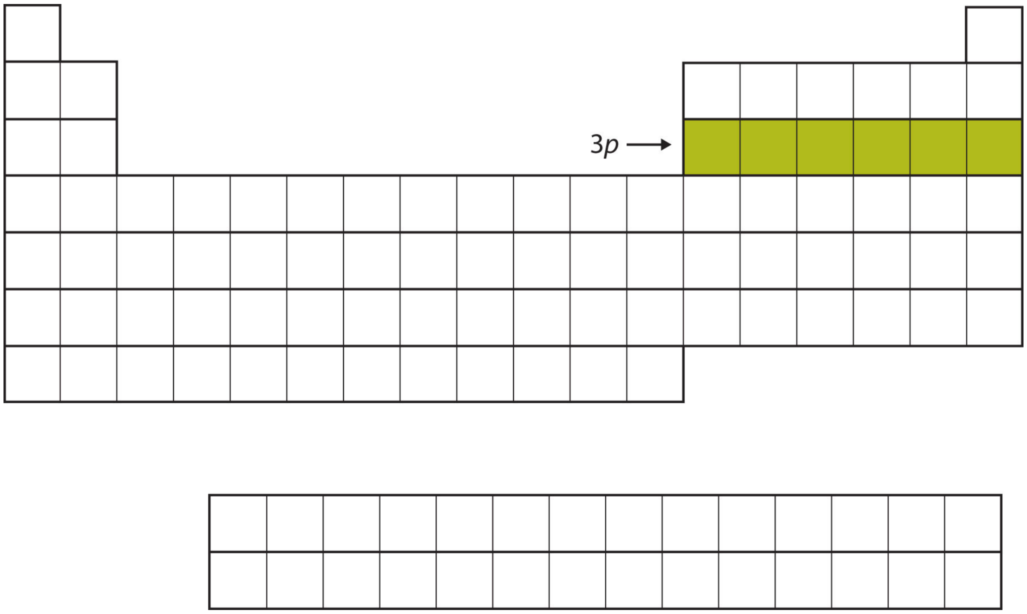


Figure8.5.6: The 3p Subshell. Next, the 3p subshell is filled with electrons.

Instead of filling the 3*d* subshell next, electrons go into the 4*s* subshell (Figure 2.4.7).

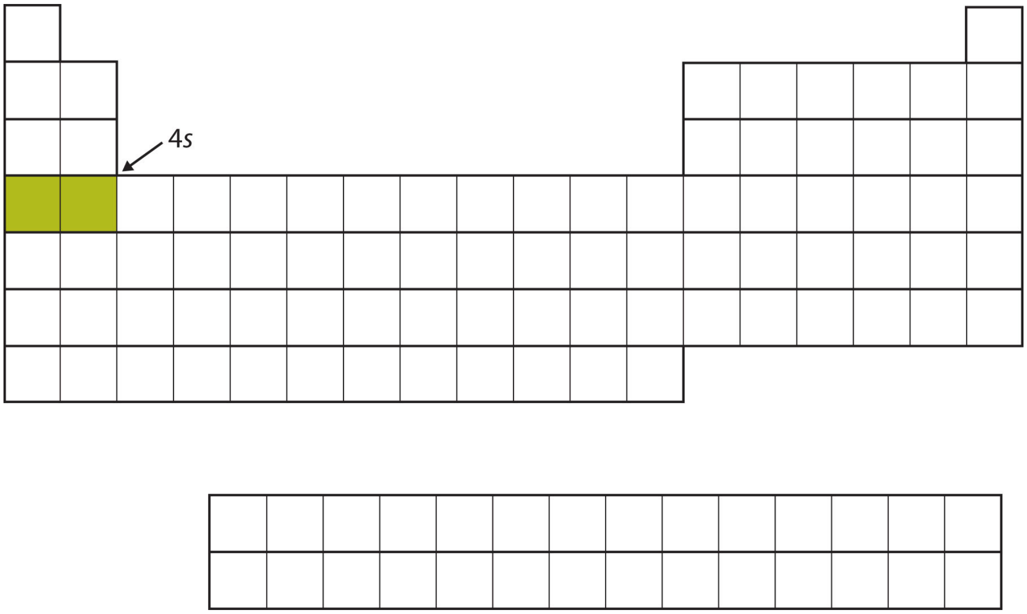


Figure 2.4.7: The 4s Subshell. The 4s subshell is filled before the 3d subshell. This is reflected in the structure of the periodic table.

After the 4*s* subshell is filled, the 3*d* subshell is filled with up to 10 electrons. This explains the section of 10 elements in the middle of the periodic table (Figure 2.4.8).

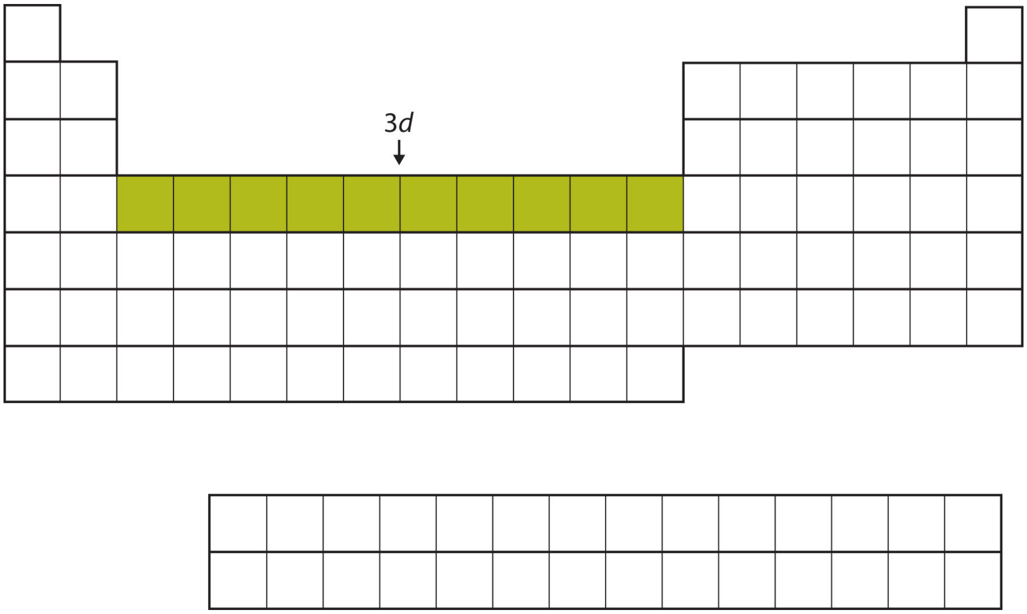


Figure 2.4.8: The 3d Subshell. The 3d subshell is filled in the middle section of the periodic table.

And so forth. As we go across the columns of the periodic table, the overall shape of the table outlines how the electrons are occupying the shells and subshells.

The first two columns on the left side of the periodic table are where the *s* subshells are being occupied. Because of this, the first two rows of the periodic table are labeled the **s block**. Similarly, the **p block** is the right-most six columns of the periodic table, the **d block** is the middle 10 columns of the periodic table, while the **f block** is the 14-column section that is normally depicted as detached from the main body of the periodic table. It could be part of the main body, but then the periodic table would be rather long and cumbersome. Figure 2.4.9 shows the blocks of the periodic table.

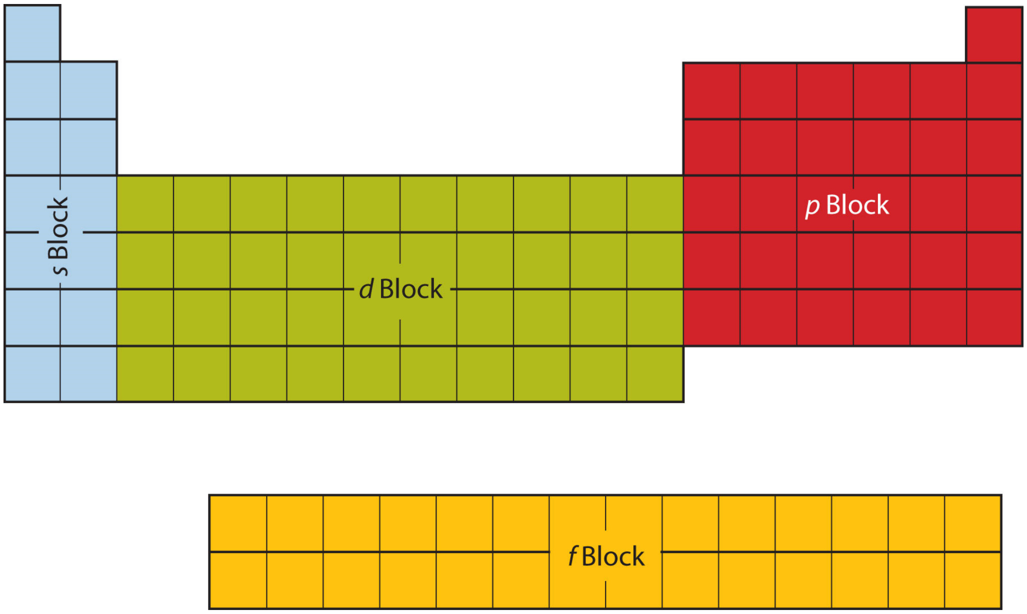


Figure 2.4.9: Blocks on the Periodic Table. The periodic table is separated into blocks depending on which subshell is being filled for the atoms that belong in that section.

Empty periodic table, separated into 4 different colored blocks. S block is blue, d block is green, p block is red and f block is orange.

The electrons in the highest-numbered shell, plus any electrons in the last unfilled subshell, are called **valence electrons**; the highest-numbered shell is called the **valence shell**. (The inner electrons are called *core electrons*.) The valence electrons largely control the chemistry of an atom. If we look at just the valence shell's electron configuration, we find that in each column, the valence shell's electron configuration is the same. For example, take the elements in the first column of the periodic table: H, Li, Na, K, Rb, and Cs. Their electron configurations (abbreviated for the larger atoms) are as follows, with the valence shell electron configuration highlighted:

Table with two columns and 6 rows. The first column on the left has various elements in the rows underneath. The second column on the right has the different corresponding electron configurations for the specified element in the rows underneath.

H:	$1s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Li:	$1s^2 2s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Na:	$[Ne]3s^{\mathbf{1}}$
K:	$[Ar]4s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Rb:	$[Kr]5s^{\mathbf{1}}$
Cs:	$[Xe]6s^{\mathbf{1}}$

They all have a similar electron configuration in their valence shells: a single *s* electron. Because much of the chemistry of an element is influenced by valence electrons, we would expect that these elements would have similar chemistry—*and they do*. The organization of electrons in atoms explains not only the shape of the periodic table, but also the fact that elements in the same column of the periodic table have similar chemistry.

The same concept applies to the other columns of the periodic table. Elements in each column have the same valence shell electron configurations, and the elements have some similar chemical properties. This is strictly true for all elements in the *s* and *p* blocks. In the *d* and *f* blocks, because there are exceptions to the order of filling of subshells with electrons, similar valence shells are not absolute in these blocks. However, many similarities do exist in these blocks, so a similarity in chemical properties is expected.

Similarity of valence shell electron configuration implies that we can determine the electron configuration of an atom solely by its position on the periodic table. Consider Se, as shown in Figure 2.4.10. It is in the fourth column of the *p* block. This means that its electron configuration should end in a p^4 electron configuration. Indeed, the electron configuration of Se is $[Ar]4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^4$, as expected.

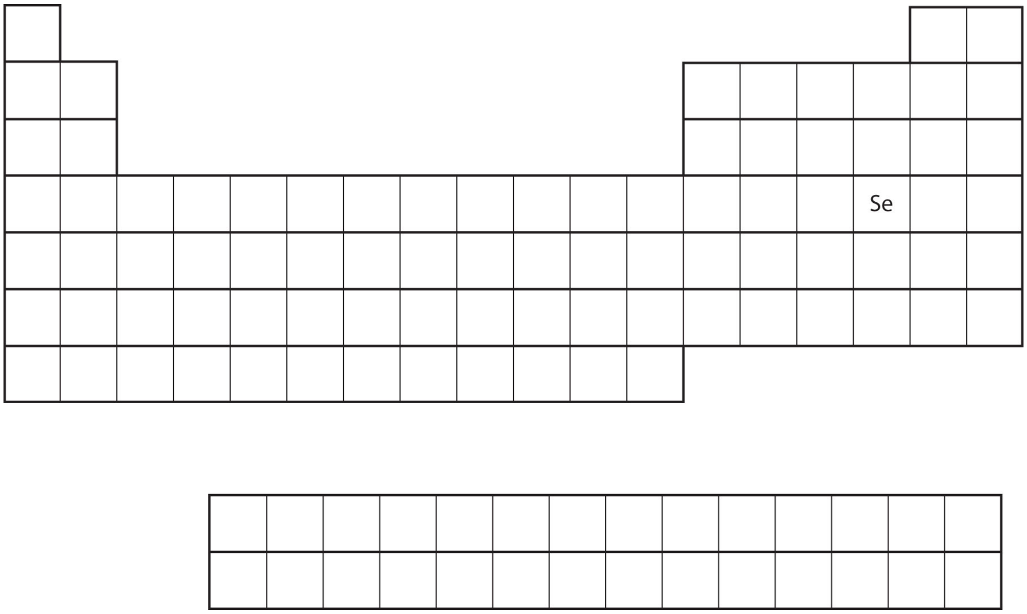


Figure 2.4.10: Selenium on the Periodic Table

Example 2.4.1

From the element's position on the periodic table, predict the valence shell electron configuration for each atom (Figure 2.4.11).

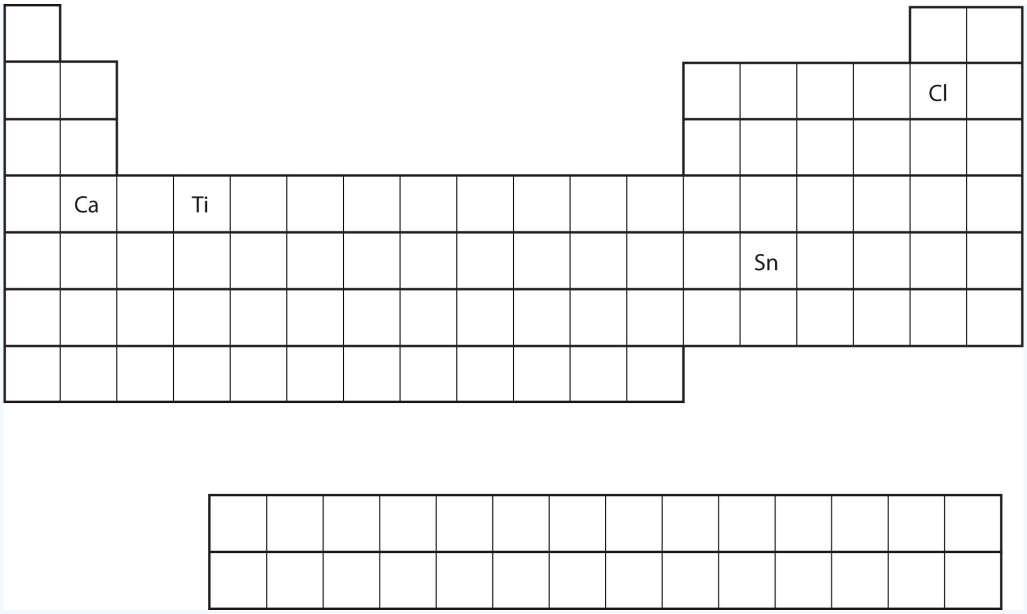


Figure 2.4.11: Various Elements on the Periodic Table

1. Ca
2. Sn

Solution

1. Ca is located in the second column of the *s* block. We would expect that its electron configuration should end with s^2. Calcium's electron configuration is $[\mathrm{Ar}]4s^2$.
2. Sn is located in the second column of the *p* block, so we expect that its electron configuration would end in p^2. Tin's electron configuration is $[\mathrm{Kr}]5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^2$.

Exercise 2.4.1

From the element's position on the periodic table, predict the valence shell electron configuration for each atom. Figure 2.4.11

a. Ti
b. Cl

Answer a

$[\mathrm{Ar}]4s^2 3d^2$

Answer b

$[\mathrm{Ne}]3s^2 3p^5$

Food and Drink Application: Artificial Colors

The color of objects comes from a different mechanism than the colors of neon and other discharge lights. Although colored lights produce their colors, objects are colored because they preferentially reflect a certain color from the white light that shines on them. A red tomato, for example, is bright red because it reflects red light while absorbing all the other colors of the rainbow.

Many foods, such as tomatoes, are highly colored; in fact, the common statement "you eat with your eyes first" is an implicit recognition that the visual appeal of food is just as important as its taste. But what about processed foods?

Many processed foods have food colorings added to them. There are two types of food colorings: natural and artificial. Natural food colorings include caramelized sugar for brown; annatto, turmeric, and saffron for various shades of orange or yellow; betanin from beets for purple; and even carmine, a deep red dye that is extracted from the cochineal, a small insect that is a parasite on cacti in Central and South America. (That's right—you may be eating bug juice!)

Some colorings are artificial. In the United States, the Food and Drug Administration currently approves only seven compounds as artificial colorings in food, beverages, and cosmetics:

- FD&C Blue #1: Brilliant Blue FCF
- FD&C Blue #2: Indigotine
- FD&C Green #3: Fast Green FCF
- RD&C Red #3: Erythrosine
- FD&C Red #40: Allura Red AC
- FD&C Yellow #5: Tartrazine
- FD&C Yellow #6: Sunset Yellow FCF

Lower-numbered colors are no longer on the market or have been removed for various reasons. Typically, these artificial colorings are large molecules that absorb certain colors of light very strongly, making them useful even at very low concentrations in foods and cosmetics. Even at such low amounts, some critics claim that a small portion of the population (especially children) is sensitive to artificial colorings and urge that their use be curtailed or halted. However, formal studies of artificial colorings and their effects on behavior have been inconclusive or contradictory. Many people continue to enjoy processed foods with artificial coloring (like those shown in the accompanying figure).

Artificial food colorings. Artificial food colorings are found in a variety of food products, such as processed foods, candies, and egg dyes. Even pet foods have artificial food coloring in them. (CC by 2.0, Matthew Bland via Flickr.)

Summary

The arrangement of electrons in atoms is responsible for the shape of the periodic table. Electron configurations can be predicted by the position of an atom on the periodic table.

2.5: Molecules and Chemical Nomenclature

Learning Objectives

- Define *molecule*.
- Name simple molecules based on their formulas.
- Determine a formula of a molecule based on its name.

There are many substances that exist as two or more atoms connected together so strongly that they behave as a single particle. These multiatom combinations are called molecules. A molecule is the smallest part of a substance that has the physical and chemical properties of that substance. In some respects, a molecule is similar to an atom. A molecule, however, is composed of more than one atom.

Table 2.5.1: Elements That Exist as Diatomic Molecules

Hydrogen (H_2)	Oxygen (O_2)	Nitrogen (N_2)	Fluorine (F_2)
Chlorine (Cl_2)	Bromine (Br_2)	Iodine (I_2)	

Some elements exist naturally as molecules. For example, hydrogen and oxygen exist as two-atom molecules. Other elements also exist naturally as diatomic molecules (Table 2.5.1). As with any molecule, these elements are labeled with a molecular formula, a formal listing of what and how many atoms are in a molecule. (Sometimes only the word *formula* is used, and its meaning is inferred from the context.) For example, the molecular formula for elemental hydrogen is H_2, with H being the symbol for hydrogen and the subscript 2 implying that there are two atoms of this element in the molecule. Other diatomic elements have similar formulas: O_2, N_2, and so forth. Other elements exist as molecules—for example, sulfur normally exists as an eight-atom molecule, S_8, while phosphorus exists as a four-atom molecule, P_4 (Figure 2.5.1). Otherwise, we will assume that elements exist as individual atoms, rather than molecules. It is assumed that there is only one atom in a formula if there is no numerical subscript on the right side of an element's symbol.

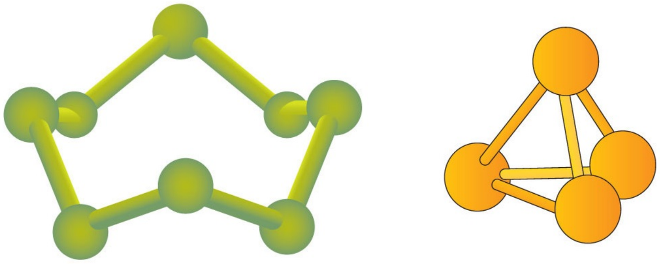


Figure 2.5.1: Molecular Art of S_8 and P_4 Molecules. If each green ball represents a sulfur atom, then the diagram on the left represents an S_8 molecule. The molecule on the right shows that one form of elemental phosphorus exists, as a four-atom molecule.

Figure 2.5.1 shows two examples of how we will be representing molecules in this text. An atom is represented by a small ball or sphere, which generally indicates where the nucleus is in the molecule. A cylindrical line connecting the balls represents the connection between the atoms that make this collection of atoms a molecule. This connection is called a chemical bond and is the connection between two atoms in a molecule.

Many compounds exist as molecules. In particular, when nonmetals connect with other nonmetals, the compounds typically exist as molecules. (Compounds between a metal and a nonmetal are different and will be considered in Section 3.4.) In some cases, there are many different kinds of molecules that can be formed between any given elements, with all the different molecules having different chemical and physical properties. How do we tell them apart?

The answer is a very specific system of naming compounds, called *chemical nomenclature*. By following the rules of nomenclature, each and every compound has its own unique name, and each name refers to one and only one compound. Here, we will start with relatively simple molecules that have only two elements in them, the so-called *binary compounds*:

1. Identify the elements in the molecule from its formula.

2. Begin the name with the element name of the first element. If there is more than one atom of this element in the molecular formula, use a numerical prefix to indicate the number of atoms, as listed in Table 2.5.2. *Do not use the prefix* mono- *if there is only one atom of the first element.*
3. Name the second element by using three pieces:
   - a numerical prefix indicating the number of atoms of the second element, plus
   - the stem of the element name (e.g., *ox* for oxygen, *chlor* for chlorine, etc.), plus
   - the suffix *-ide*
4. Combine the two words, leaving a space between them.

Table 2.5.2: Numerical Prefixes Used in Naming Molecular Compounds

The Number of Atoms of an Element	Prefix
1	mono-
2	di-
3	tri-
4	tetra-
5	penta-
6	hexa-
7	hepta-
8	octa-
9	nona-
10	deca-

Let us see how these steps work for a molecule whose molecular formula is SO_2, which has one sulfur atom and two oxygen atoms—this completes step 1. According to step 2, we start with the name of the first element—sulfur. Remember, we do not use the *mono-* prefix for the first element. Now for step 3, we combine the numerical prefix *di-* (see Table 2.5.2) with the stem *ox-* and the suffix *-ide*, to make *dioxide*. Bringing these two words together, we have the unique name for this compound—sulfur dioxide.

Why all this trouble? There is another common compound consisting of sulfur and oxygen whose molecular formula is SO_3, so the compounds need to be distinguished. SO_3 has three oxygen atoms in it, so it is a different compound with different chemical and physical properties. The system of chemical nomenclature is designed to *give this compound its own unique name*. Its name, if you go through all the steps, is sulfur trioxide. Different compounds have different names.

In some cases, when a prefix ends in *a* or *o;* and the element name begins with *o*, we drop the *a* or *o* on the prefix. So we see *monoxide* or *pentoxide*, rather than *monooxide* or *pentaoxide* in molecule names.

✓ Example 2.5.1

Name each molecule.

a. PF_3
b. CO
c. Se_2Br_2

Solution

a. A molecule with a single phosphorus atom and three fluorine atoms is called phosphorus trifluoride.
b. A compound with one carbon atom and one oxygen atom is properly called carbon monoxide, not carbon monooxide.
c. There are two atoms of each element, selenium and bromine. According to the rules, the proper name here is *diselenium dibromide*.

? Exercise 2.5.1

Name each molecule.

a. SF_4
b. P_2S_5

Answer a

sulfur tetrafluoride

Answer b

diphosphorus pentasulfide

One great thing about this system is that it works both ways. From the name of a compound, you should be able to determine its molecular formula. Simply list the element symbols, with a numerical subscript if there is more than one atom of that element, in the order of the name (we do not use the subscript 1 if there is only one atom of the element present; 1 is implied). From the name *nitrogen trichloride*, you should be able to get NCl_3 as the formula for this molecule. From the name *diphosphorus pentoxide*, you should be able to get the formula P_2O_5 (note the numerical prefix on the first element, indicating there is more than one atom of phosphorus in the formula).

✓ Example 2.5.2

Give the formula for each molecule.

a. carbon tetrachloride
b. silicon dioxide
c. trisilicon tetranitride

Solution

a. The name *carbon tetrachloride* implies one carbon atom and four chlorine atoms, so the formula is CCl_4.
b. The name *silicon dioxide* implies one silicon atom and two oxygen atoms, so the formula is SiO_2.
c. We have a name that has numerical prefixes on both elements. *Tri*- means three, and *tetra*- means four, so the formula of this compound is Si_3N_4.

? Exercise 2.5.2

Give the formula for each molecule.

a. disulfur difluoride
b. iodine pentabromide

Answer a

S_2F_2

Answer b

IBr_5

Some simple molecules have common names that we use as part of the formal system of chemical nomenclature. For example, H_2O is given the name *water*, not *dihydrogen monoxide*. NH_3 is called *ammonia*, while CH_4 is called *methane*. We will occasionally see other molecules that have common names; we will point them out as they occur.

Key Takeaways

- Molecules are groups of atoms that behave as a single unit.
- Some elements exist as molecules: hydrogen, oxygen, sulfur, and so forth.
- There are rules that can express a unique name for any given molecule, and a unique formula for any given name.

2.6: Masses of Atoms and Molecules

Learning Objective

- Express the masses of atoms and molecules.

Because matter is defined as anything that has mass and takes up space, it should not be surprising to learn that atoms and molecules have mass.

Individual atoms and molecules, however, are very small, and the masses of individual atoms and molecules are also very small. For macroscopic objects, we use units such as grams and kilograms to state their masses, but these units are much too big to comfortably describe the masses of individual atoms and molecules. Another scale is needed.

Atomic Mass Unit

The atomic mass unit (u; some texts use amu, but this older style is no longer accepted) is defined as one-twelfth of the mass of a carbon-12 atom, an isotope of carbon that has six protons and six neutrons in its nucleus. By this scale, the mass of a proton is 1.00728 u, the mass of a neutron is 1.00866 u, and the mass of an electron is 0.000549 u. There will not be much error if you estimate the mass of an atom by simply counting the total number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus (i.e., identify its mass number) and ignore the electrons. Thus, the mass of carbon-12 is about 12 u, the mass of oxygen-16 is about 16 u, and the mass of uranium-238 is about 238 u. More exact masses are found in scientific references—for example, the exact mass of uranium-238 is 238.050788 u, so you can see that we are not far off by using the whole-number value as the mass of the atom.

What is the mass of an element? This is somewhat more complicated because most elements exist as a mixture of isotopes, each of which has its own mass. Thus, although it is easy to speak of the mass of an atom, when talking about the mass of an element, we must take the isotopic mixture into account.

Atomic Mass

The atomic mass of an element is a weighted average of the masses of the isotopes that compose an element. What do we mean by a weighted average? Well, consider an element that consists of two isotopes, 50% with mass 10 u and 50% with mass 11 u. A weighted average is found by multiplying each mass by its fractional occurrence (in decimal form) and then adding all the products. The sum is the weighted average and serves as the formal atomic mass of the element. In this example, we have the following:

0.50 × 10 u	= 5.0 u
0.50 × 11 u	= 5.5 u
Sum	= 10.5 u = the atomic mass of our element

Note that no atom in our hypothetical element has a mass of 10.5 u; rather, that is the average mass of the atoms, weighted by their percent occurrence.

This example is similar to a real element. Boron exists as about 20% boron-10 (five protons and five neutrons in the nuclei) and about 80% boron-11 (five protons and six neutrons in the nuclei). The atomic mass of boron is calculated similarly to what we did for our hypothetical example, but the percentages are different:

0.20 × 10 u	= 2.0 u
0.80 × 11 u	= 8.8 u
Sum	= 10.8 u = the atomic mass of boron

Thus, we use 10.8 u for the atomic mass of boron.

Virtually all elements exist as mixtures of isotopes, so atomic masses may vary significantly from whole numbers. Table 2.6.1 lists the atomic masses of some elements. The atomic masses in Table 2.6.1 are listed to three decimal places where possible, but in most cases, only one or two decimal places are needed. Note that many of the atomic masses, especially the larger ones, are not very close to whole numbers. This is, in part, the effect of an increasing number of isotopes as the atoms increase in size. (The record number is 10 isotopes for tin.)

Table 2.6.1: Selected Atomic Masses of Some Elements

Element Name	Atomic Mass (u)	Element Name	Atomic Mass (u)
Aluminum	26.981	Molybdenum	95.94
Argon	39.948	Neon	20.180
Arsenic	74.922	Nickel	58.693
Barium	137.327	Nitrogen	14.007
Beryllium	9.012	Oxygen	15.999
Bismuth	208.980	Palladium	106.42
Boron	10.811	Phosphorus	30.974
Bromine	79.904	Platinum	195.084
Calcium	40.078	Potassium	39.098
Carbon	12.011	Radium	n/a
Chlorine	35.453	Radon	n/a
Cobalt	58.933	Rubidium	85.468
Copper	63.546	Scandium	44.956
Fluorine	18.998	Selenium	78.96
Gallium	69.723	Silicon	28.086
Germanium	72.64	Silver	107.868
Gold	196.967	Sodium	22.990
Helium	4.003	Strontium	87.62
Hydrogen	1.008	Sulfur	32.065
Iodine	126.904	Tantalum	180.948
Iridium	192.217	Tin	118.710
Iron	55.845	Titanium	47.867
Krypton	83.798	Tungsten	183.84
Lead	207.2	Uranium	238.029
Lithium	6.941	Xenon	131.293
Magnesium	24.305	Zinc	65.409
Manganese	54.938	Zirconium	91.224
Mercury	200.59	Molybdenum	95.94

Note: Atomic mass is given to three decimal places, if known.

Molecular Mass

Now that we understand that atoms have mass, it is easy to extend the concept to the mass of molecules. The molecular mass is the sum of the masses of the atoms in a molecule. This may seem like a trivial extension of the concept, but it is important to count the number of each type of atom in the molecular formula. Also, although each atom in a molecule is a particular isotope, we use the weighted average, or atomic mass, for each atom in the molecule.

For example, if we were to determine the molecular mass of dinitrogen trioxide, N_2O_3, we would need to add the atomic mass of nitrogen two times with the atomic mass of oxygen three times:

2 N masses = 2 × 14.007 u	= 28.014 u
3 O masses = 3 × 15.999 u	= 47.997 u
Total	= 76.011 u = the molecular mass of N_2O_3

We would not be far off if we limited our numbers to one or even two decimal places.

✓ Example 2.6.1

What is the molecular mass of each substance?

a. NBr_3
b. C_2H_6

Solution

Add one atomic mass of nitrogen and three atomic masses of bromine:

Solutions to Example 3.4.1

1 N mass	= 14.007 u
3 Br masses = 3 × 79.904 u	= 239.712 u
Total	= 253.719 u = the molecular mass of NBr_3

Add two atomic masses of carbon and six atomic masses of hydrogen:

Solutions to Example 3.4.1

2 C masses = 2 × 12.011 u	= 24.022 u
6 H masses = 6 × 1.008 u	= 6.048 u
Total	= 30.070 u = the molecular mass of C_2H_6

The compound C_2H_6 also has a common name—ethane.

? Exercise 2.6.1

What is the molecular mass of each substance?

a. SO_2
b. $(PF3$

Answer a

64.063 u

Answer b

87.968 u

Chemistry is Everywhere: Sulfur Hexafluoride

On March 20, 1995, the Japanese terrorist group Aum Shinrikyo (Sanskrit for "Supreme Truth") released some sarin gas in the Tokyo subway system; twelve people were killed, and thousands were injured (Figure 2.6.2*a*). Sarin (molecular formula $C_4H_{10}FPO_2$) is a nerve toxin that was first synthesized in 1938. It is regarded as one of the most deadly toxins known, estimated to be about 500 times more potent than cyanide. Scientists and engineers who study the spread of chemical weapons such as sarin (yes, there are such scientists) would like to have a similar less dangerous chemical to study, indeed one that is nontoxic, so they are not at risk themselves.

Sulfur hexafluoride is used as a model compound for sarin. SF_6 (a molecular model of which is shown Figure 2.6.2*b*) has a similar molecular mass (about 146 u) as sarin (about 140 u), so it has similar physical properties in the vapor phase. Sulfur hexafluoride is also very easy to accurately detect, even at low levels, and it is not a normal part of the atmosphere, so there is little potential for contamination from natural sources. Consequently, SF_6 is also used as an aerial tracer for ventilation systems in buildings. It is nontoxic and very chemically inert, so workers do not have to take special precautions other than watching for asphyxiation.

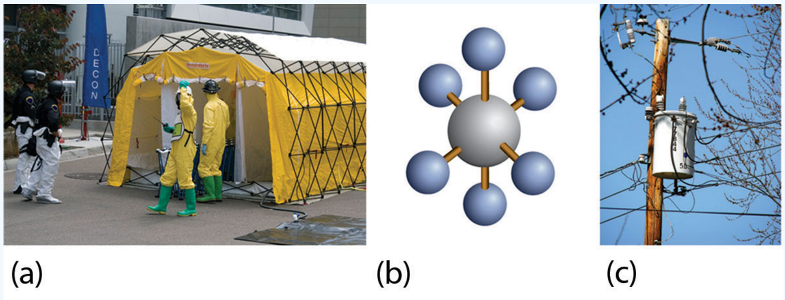


Figure 2.6.2: Sarin and Sulfur Hexafluoride © Thinkstock. (a) Properly protected workers clear out the Tokyo subway after the nerve toxin sarin was released. (b) A molecular model of SF_6. (c) A high-voltage electrical switchgear assembly that would be filled with SF_6 as a spark suppressant.

Sulfur hexafluoride also has another interesting use: a spark suppressant in high-voltage electrical equipment. High-pressure SF_6 gas is used in place of older oils that may have contaminants that are not environmentally friendly (Figure 2.6.2*c*).

Key Takeaways

- The atomic mass unit (u) is a unit that describes the masses of individual atoms and molecules.
- The atomic mass is the weighted average of the masses of all isotopes of an element.
- The molecular mass is the sum of the masses of the atoms in a molecule.

2.7: Ions and Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Know how ions form.
- Learn the characteristic charges that ions have.
- Construct a proper formula for an ionic compound.
- Generate a proper name for an ionic compound.

So far, we have discussed elements and compounds that are electrically neutral. They have the same number of electrons as protons, so the negative charges of the electrons are balanced by the positive charges of the protons. However, this is not always the case. Electrons can move from one atom to another; when they do, species with overall electric charges are formed. Such species are called ions. Species with overall positive charges are termed **cations**, while species with overall negative charges are called **anions**. Remember that ions are formed only when *electrons* move from one atom to another; a proton never moves from one atom to another. Compounds formed from positive and negative ions are **ionic compounds**.

Individual atoms can gain or lose electrons. When they do, they become *monatomic* ions. When atoms gain or lose electrons, they usually gain or lose a characteristic number of electrons and so take on a characteristic overall charge. Table $2.7.1$ lists some common ions in terms of how many electrons they lose (making cations) or gain (making anions). There are several things to notice about the ions in Table $2.7.1$. First, each element that forms a cation is a metal, except for one (hydrogen), while each element that forms an anion is a nonmetal. This is actually one of the chemical properties of metals and nonmetals: metals tend to form cations, while nonmetals tend to form anions. Second, most atoms form ions of a single characteristic charge. When sodium atoms form ions, they always form a 1+ charge, never a 2+ or 3+ or even 1− charge. Thus, if you commit the information in Table $2.7.1$ to memory, you will always know what charges most atoms form.

Table $2.7.1$: Monatomic Ions of Various Charges

.

Ions formed by losing a single electron	H^+
Na^+	
K^+	
Rb^+	
Ag^+	
Au^+	
Ions formed by losing two electrons	Mg^{2+}
	Ca^{2+}
	Sr^{2+}
	Fe^{2+}
	Co^{2+}
	Ni^{2+}
	Cu^{2+}
	Zn^{2+}
	Sn^{2+}
	Hg^{2+}
	Pb^{2+}
Ions formed by losing three electrons	Sc^{3+}
	Fe^{3+}
	Co^{3+}

Ions formed by losing a single electron	H^+
	Ni^{3+}
	Au^{3+}
	Al^{3+}
	Cr^{3+}
Ions formed by losing four electrons	Ti^{4+}
	Sn^{4+}
	Pb^{4+}
Ions formed by gaining a single electron	F^-
	Cl^-
	Br^-
	I^-
Ions formed by gaining two electrons	O^{2-}
	S^{2-}
	Se^{2-}
Ions formed by gaining three electrons	N^{3-}
	P^{3-}

Third, there are some exceptions to the previous point. A few elements, all of which are metals, can form more than one possible charge. For example, iron atoms can form 2+ cations or 3+ cations. Cobalt is another element that can form more than one possible charged ion (2+ and 3+), while lead can form 2+ or 4+ cations. Unfortunately, there is little understanding which two charges a metal atom may take, so it is best to just memorize the possible charges a particular element can have.

Note the convention for indicating an ion. The magnitude of the charge is listed as a right superscript next to the symbol of the element. If the charge is a single positive or negative one, the number 1 is not written; if the magnitude of the charge is greater than 1, then the number is written *before* the + or − sign. An element symbol without a charge written next to it is assumed to be the uncharged atom.

Naming an ion is straightforward. For a cation, simply use the name of the element and add the word *ion* (or if you want to be more specific, add *cation*) after the element's name. So Na^+ is the sodium ion; Ca^{2+} is the calcium ion. If the element has more than one possible charge, the value of the charge comes after the element name and before the word *ion*. Thus, Fe^{2+} is the iron two ion, while Fe^{3+} is the iron three ion. In print, we use roman numerals in parentheses to represent the charge on the ion; so these two iron ions would be represented as the iron(II) cation and the iron(III) cation, respectively.

For a monatomic anion, use the stem of the element name and append the suffix -*ide* to it, and then add *ion*. This is similar to how we named molecular compounds. Thus, Cl^- is the chloride ion, and N^{3-} is the nitride ion.

✓ Example 2.7.1

Name each species.

a. O^{2-}
b. Co
c. Co^{2+}

Solution

a. This species has a 2− charge on it, so it is an anion. Anions are named using the stem of the element name with the suffix -*ide* added. This is the oxide anion.
b. Because this species has no charge, it is an atom in its elemental form. This is cobalt.

c. In this case, there is a 2+ charge on the atom, so it is a cation. We note from Table $2.7.1$ that cobalt cations can have two possible charges, so the name of the ion must specify which charge the ion has. This is the cobalt(II) cation.

Exercise 2.7.1

Name each species.

a. P^{3-}
b. Sr^{2+}

Answers

a. the phosphide anion
b. the strontium cation

Ionic Formulas

Chemical formulas for ionic compounds are called ionic formulas. A proper ionic formula has a cation and an anion in it; an ionic compound is never formed between two cations only or two anions only. The key to writing proper ionic formulas is simple: the total positive charge must balance the total negative charge. Because the charges on the ions are characteristic, sometimes we have to have more than one of a cation or an anion to balance the overall positive and negative charges. It is conventional to use the lowest ratio of ions that are needed to balance the charges.

For example, consider the ionic compound between Na^+ and Cl^-. Each ion has a single charge, one positive and one negative, so we need only one ion of each to balance the overall charge. When writing the ionic formula, we follow two additional conventions: (1) write the formula for the cation first and the formula for the anion second, but (2) do not write the charges on the ions. Thus, for the compound between Na^+ and Cl^-, we have the ionic formula NaCl (Figure $2.7.1$). The formula Na_2Cl_2 also has balanced charges, but the convention is to use the lowest ratio of ions, which would be one of each. (Remember from our conventions for writing formulas that we do not write a 1 subscript if there is only one atom of a particular element present.) For the ionic compound between magnesium cations (Mg^{2+}) and oxide anions (O^{2-}), again we need only one of each ion to balance the charges. By convention, the formula is MgO.

Figure $2.7.1$: The ionic compound $NaCl$ is table salt and is very common. (Public Domain; Pexels.)

For the ionic compound between Mg^{2+} ions and Cl^- ions, we now consider the fact that the charges have different magnitudes: 2+ on the magnesium ion and 1− on the chloride ion. To balance the charges with the lowest number of ions possible, we need to have two chloride ions to balance the charge on the one magnesium ion. Rather than write the formula MgClCl, we combine the two chloride ions and write it with a 2 subscript: $MgCl_2$.

What is the formula $MgCl_2$ telling us? There are two chloride ions in the formula. Although chlorine as an element is a diatomic molecule, Cl_2, elemental chlorine is not part of this ionic compound. The chlorine is in the form of a negatively charged *ion*, not the neutral *element*. The 2 subscript is in the ionic formula because we need two Cl^- ions to balance the charge on one Mg^{2+} ion.

✓ Example 2.7.2

Write the proper ionic formula for each of the two given ions.

a. Ca^{2+} and Cl^{-}
b. Al^{3+} and F^{-}
c. Al^{3+} and O^{2-}

Solution

a. We need two Cl^{-} ions to balance the charge on one Ca^{2+} ion, so the proper ionic formula is $CaCl_2$.
b. We need three F^{-} ions to balance the charge on the Al^{3+} ion, so the proper ionic formula is AlF_3.
c. With Al^{3+} and O^{2-}, note that neither charge is a perfect multiple of the other. This means we have to go to a least common multiple, which in this case will be six. To get a total of 6+, we need two Al^{3+} ions; to get 6−, we need three O^{2-} ions. Hence the proper ionic formula is Al_2O_3.

? Exercise 2.7.2

Write the proper ionic formulas for each of the two given ions.

a. Fe^{2+} and S^{2-}
b. Fe^{3+} and S^{2-}

Answers

a. FeS
b. Fe_2S_3

Naming ionic compounds is simple: combine the name of the cation and the name of the anion, in both cases omitting the word *ion*. *Do not use numerical prefixes if there is more than one ion necessary to balance the charges.* NaCl is sodium chloride, a combination of the name of the cation (sodium) and the anion (chloride). MgO is magnesium oxide. $MgCl_2$ is magnesium chloride —*not* magnesium dichloride.

When naming ionic compounds whose cations can have more than one possible charge, we must also include the charge, in parentheses and in roman numerals, as part of the name. Hence FeS is iron(II) sulfide, while Fe_2S_3 is iron(III) sulfide. Again, no numerical prefixes appear in the name. The number of ions in the formula is dictated by the need to balance the positive and negative charges.

✓ Example 2.7.3

Name each ionic compound.

a. $CaCl_2$
b. AlF_3
c. Co_2O_3

Solution

a. Using the names of the ions, this ionic compound is named calcium chloride. It is *not* calcium(II) chloride, because calcium forms only one cation when it forms an ion, and it has a characteristic charge of 2+.
b. The name of this ionic compound is aluminum fluoride.
c. We know that cobalt can have more than one possible charge; we just need to determine what it is. Oxide always has a 2− charge, so with three oxide ions, we have a total negative charge of 6−. This means that the two cobalt ions have to contribute 6+, which for two cobalt ions means that each one is 3+. Therefore, the proper name for this ionic compound is cobalt(III) oxide.

Exercise 2.7.3

Name each ionic compound.

a. Sc_2O_3
b. $AgCl$

Answers

a. scandium oxide
b. silver chloride

How do you know whether a formula—and by extension, a name—is for a molecular compound or for an ionic compound? Molecular compounds form between nonmetals and nonmetals, while ionic compounds form between metals and nonmetals. The periodic table can be used to determine which elements are metals and nonmetals.

There also exists a group of ions that contain more than one atom. These are called **polyatomic ions**. Table 2.7.2 lists the formulas, charges, and names of some common polyatomic ions. Only one of them, the ammonium ion, is a cation; the rest are anions. Most of them also contain oxygen atoms, so sometimes they are referred to as ***oxyanions***. Some of them, such as nitrate and nitrite, and sulfate and sulfite, have very similar formulas and names, so care must be taken to get the formulas and names correct. Note that the -ite polyatomic ion has one less oxygen atom in its formula than the -ate ion but with the same ionic charge.

Table 2.7.2: Common Polyatomic Ions

Name	Formula and Charge		Name	Formula and Charge
ammonium	NH_4^+		hydroxide	OH^-
acetate	$C_2H_3O_2^-$, or CH_3COO^-		nitrate	NO_3^-
bicarbonate (hydrogen carbonate)	HCO_3^-		nitrite	NO_2^-
bisulfate (hydrogen sulfate)	HSO_4^-		peroxide	O_2^{2-}
carbonate	CO_3^{2-}		perchlorate	ClO_4^-
chlorate	ClO_3^-		phosphate	PO_4^{3-}
chromate	CrO_4^{2-}		sulfate	SO_4^{2-}
cyanide	CN^-		sulfite	SO_3^{2-}
dichromate	$Cr_2O_7^{2-}$		triiodide	I_3^-

The naming of ionic compounds that contain polyatomic ions follows the same rules as the naming for other ionic compounds: simply combine the name of the cation and the name of the anion. Do not use numerical prefixes in the name if there is more than one polyatomic ion; the only exception to this is if the name of the ion itself contains a numerical prefix, such as dichromate or triiodide.

Writing the formulas of ionic compounds has one important difference. If more than one polyatomic ion is needed to balance the overall charge in the formula, enclose the formula of the polyatomic ion in parentheses and write the proper numerical subscript to the right and *outside* of the parentheses. Thus, the formula between calcium ions, Ca^{2+}, and nitrate ions, NO_3^-, is properly written $Ca(NO_3)_2$, not $CaNO_{32}$ or CaN_2O_6. Use parentheses where required. The name of this ionic compound is simply calcium nitrate.

Example 2.7.4

Write the proper formula and give the proper name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.

a. NH_4^+ and S^{2-}

b. Al^{3+} and $PO_4{}^{3-}$
c. Fe^{2+} and $PO_4{}^{3-}$

Solution

a. Because the ammonium ion has a 1+ charge and the sulfide ion has a 2− charge, we need two ammonium ions to balance the charge on a single sulfide ion. Enclosing the formula for the ammonium ion in parentheses, we have $(NH_4)_2S$. The compound's name is ammonium sulfide.
b. Because the ions have the same magnitude of charge, we need only one of each to balance the charges. The formula is $AlPO_4$, and the name of the compound is aluminum phosphate.
c. Neither charge is an exact multiple of the other, so we have to go to the least common multiple of 6. To get 6+, we need three iron(II) ions, and to get 6−, we need two phosphate ions. The proper formula is $Fe_3(PO_4)_2$, and the compound's name is iron(II) phosphate.

? Exercise 2.7.4

Write the proper formula and give the proper name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.

a. $NH_4{}^+$ and $PO_4{}^{3-}$
b. Co^{3+} and $NO_2{}^-$

Answers

a. $(NH_4)_3PO_4$, ammonium phosphate
b. $Co(NO_2)_3$, cobalt(III) nitrite

Food and Drink Application: Sodium in Your Food

The element sodium, at least in its ionic form as Na^+, is a necessary nutrient for humans to live. In fact, the human body is approximately 0.15% sodium, with the average person having one-twentieth to one-tenth of a kilogram in their body at any given time, mostly in fluids outside cells and in other bodily fluids.

Sodium is also present in our diet. The common table salt we use on our foods is an ionic sodium compound. Many processed foods also contain significant amounts of sodium added to them as a variety of ionic compounds. Why are sodium compounds used so much? Usually sodium compounds are inexpensive, but, more importantly, most ionic sodium compounds dissolve easily. This allows processed food manufacturers to add sodium-containing substances to food mixtures and know that the compound will dissolve and distribute evenly throughout the food. Simple ionic compounds such as sodium nitrite ($NaNO_2$) are added to cured meats, such as bacon and deli-style meats, while a compound called sodium benzoate is added to many packaged foods as a preservative. Table 2.7.3 is a partial list of some sodium additives used in food. Some of them you may recognize after reading this chapter. Others you may not recognize, but they are all ionic sodium compounds with some negatively charged ion also present.

Table 2.7.3: Some Sodium Compounds Added to Food

Sodium Compound	Use in Food
Sodium acetate	preservative, acidity regulator
Sodium adipate	food acid
Sodium alginate	thickener, vegetable gum, stabilizer, gelling agent, emulsifier
Sodium aluminum phosphate	acidity regulator, emulsifier
Sodium aluminosilicate	anti-caking agent
Sodium ascorbate	antioxidant
Sodium benzoate	preservative
Sodium bicarbonate	mineral salt
Sodium bisulfite	preservative, antioxidant

Sodium Compound	Use in Food
Sodium carbonate	mineral salt
Sodium carboxymethylcellulose	emulsifier
Sodium citrates	food acid
Sodium dehydroacetate	preservative
Sodium erythorbate	antioxidant
Sodium erythorbin	antioxidant
Sodium ethyl para-hydroxybenzoate	preservative
Sodium ferrocyanide	anti-caking agent
Sodium formate	preservative
Sodium fumarate	food acid
Sodium gluconate	stabilizer
Sodium hydrogen acetate	preservative, acidity regulator
Sodium hydroxide	mineral salt
Sodium lactate	food acid
Sodium malate	food acid
Sodium metabisulfite	preservative, antioxidant, bleaching agent
Sodium methyl para-hydroxybenzoate	preservative
Sodium nitrate	preservative, color fixative
Sodium nitrite	preservative, color fixative
Sodium orthophenyl phenol	preservative
Sodium propionate	preservative
Sodium propyl para-hydroxybenzoate	preservative
Sodium sorbate	preservative
Sodium stearoyl lactylate	emulsifier
Sodium succinates	acidity regulator, flavor enhancer
Sodium salts of fatty acids	emulsifier, stabilizer, anti-caking agent
Sodium sulfite	mineral salt, preservative, antioxidant
Sodium sulfite	preservative, antioxidant
Sodium tartrate	food acid
Sodium tetraborate	preservative

The use of so many sodium compounds in prepared and processed foods has alarmed some physicians and nutritionists. They argue that the average person consumes too much sodium from his or her diet. The average person needs only about 500 mg of sodium every day; most people consume more than this—up to 10 times as much. Some studies have implicated increased sodium intake with high blood pressure; newer studies suggest that the link is questionable. However, there has been a push to reduce the amount of sodium most people ingest every day: avoid processed and manufactured foods, read labels on packaged foods (which include an indication of the sodium content), avoid oversalting foods, and use other herbs and spices besides salt in cooking.

Nutrition Facts

Serving Size 8 oz (227 g/8 oz)
Servings Per Container About 3

Amount Per Serving

Calories 180 Calories from Fat 60

	% **Daily Value***
Total Fat 6g	**10**%
Saturated Fat 1g	**5**%
Trans Fat 0g	
Cholesterol 5mg	**2**%
Sodium 75mg	**3**%
Total Carbohydrate 26g	**9**%
Dietary Fiber 5g	**19**%
Sugars 11g	
Protein 8g	

Vitamin A 60% • Vitamin C 70%
Calcium 8% • Iron 10%

* Percent Daily Values are based on a 2,000 calorie diet. Your daily values may be higher or lower depending on your calorie needs.

	Calories	2,000	2,500
Total Fat	Less than	65g	80g
Sat Fat	Less than	20g	25g
Cholesterol	Less than	300mg	300mg
Sodium	Less than	2,400mg	2,400mg
Total Carbohydrate		300g	375g
Dietary Fiber		25g	30g

Calories per gram:
Fat 9 • Carbohydrate 4 • Protein 4

Figure 2.7.2: Food labels include the amount of sodium per serving. This particular label shows that there are 75 mg of sodium in one serving of this particular food item.

Key Takeaways

- Ions form when atoms lose or gain electrons.
- Ionic compounds have positive ions and negative ions.
- Ionic formulas balance the total positive and negative charges.
- Ionic compounds have a simple system of naming.
- Groups of atoms can have an overall charge and make ionic compounds.

2.8: Prelude to Chemical Bonds

Diamond is the hardest natural material known on Earth. Yet diamond is just pure carbon. What is special about this element that makes diamond so hard? Bonds. Chemical bonds.

In a perfect diamond crystal, each C atom makes four connections—bonds—to four other C atoms in a three-dimensional matrix. Four is the greatest number of bonds that is commonly made by atoms, so C atoms maximize their interactions with other atoms. This three-dimensional array of connections extends throughout the diamond crystal, making it essentially one large molecule. Breaking a diamond means breaking every bond at once. Also, the bonds are moderately strong. There are stronger interactions known, but the carbon-carbon connection is fairly strong itself. Not only does a person have to break many connections at once, but the bonds are also strong connections from the start.

Diamond is the hardest known natural substance and is composed solely of the element carbon. (CC SA-BY 3.0; Mario Sarto).

There are other substances that have bonding arrangements similar to diamond. Silicon dioxide and boron nitride have some similarities, but neither of them comes close to the ultimate hardness of diamond.

2.9: Lewis Electron Dot Diagrams

Learning Objective

- Draw a Lewis electron dot diagram for an atom or a monatomic ion.

In almost all cases, chemical bonds are formed by interactions of valence electrons in atoms. To facilitate our understanding of how valence electrons interact, a simple way of representing those valence electrons would be useful.

A **Lewis electron dot diagram** (or electron dot diagram, or a Lewis diagram, or a Lewis structure) is a representation of the valence electrons of an atom that uses dots around the symbol of the element. The number of dots equals the number of valence electrons in the atom. These dots are arranged to the right and left and above and below the symbol, with no more than two dots on a side. (The order in which the positions are used does not matter.) For example, the Lewis electron dot diagram for hydrogen is simply

$$\mathbf{H}\cdot$$

Because the side is not important, the Lewis electron dot diagram could also be drawn as follows:

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}} \quad or \quad \cdot\mathbf{H} \quad or \quad \underset{\cdot}{\mathbf{H}}$$

The electron dot diagram for helium, with two valence electrons, is as follows:

$$\mathbf{He}:$$

By putting the two electrons together on the same side, we emphasize the fact that these two electrons are both in the 1*s* subshell; this is the common convention we will adopt, although there will be exceptions later. The next atom, lithium, has an electron configuration of $1s^2 2s^1$, so it has only one electron in its valence shell. Its electron dot diagram resembles that of hydrogen, except the symbol for lithium is used:

$$\mathbf{Li}\cdot$$

Beryllium has two valence electrons in its 2*s* shell, so its electron dot diagram is like that of helium:

$$\mathbf{Be}:$$

The next atom is boron. Its valence electron shell is $2s^2 2p^1$, so it has three valence electrons. The third electron will go on another side of the symbol:

$$\dot{\mathbf{B}}\mathbf{e}:$$

Again, it does not matter on which sides of the symbol the electron dots are positioned.

For carbon, there are four valence electrons, two in the 2*s* subshell and two in the 2*p* subshell. As usual, we will draw two dots together on one side, to represent the 2*s* electrons. However, conventionally, we draw the dots for the two *p* electrons on different sides. As such, the electron dot diagram for carbon is as follows:

$$\cdot\dot{\mathbf{C}}:$$

With N, which has three *p* electrons, we put a single dot on each of the three remaining sides:

$$\cdot\underset{\cdot}{\dot{\mathbf{N}}}:$$

For oxygen, which has four *p* electrons, we now have to start doubling up on the dots on one other side of the symbol. When doubling up electrons, make sure that a side has no more than two electrons.

$$\cdot\underset{\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{O}}}:$$

Fluorine and neon have seven and eight dots, respectively:

$$:\underset{\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{F}}}:$$

$$\mathbf{:\overset{\cdot\cdot}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{Ne}}:}$$

With the next element, sodium, the process starts over with a single electron because sodium has a single electron in its highest-numbered shell, the n = 3 shell. By going through the periodic table, we see that the Lewis electron dot diagrams of atoms will never have more than eight dots around the atomic symbol.

Example 2.9.1

What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element?

a. aluminum
b. selenium

Solution

a. The valence electron configuration for aluminum is $3s^23p^1$. So it would have three dots around the symbol for aluminum, two of them paired to represent the $3s$ electrons:

$$\dot{Al}:$$

2. The valence electron configuration for selenium is $4s^24p^4$. In the highest-numbered shell, the n = 4 shell, there are six electrons. Its electron dot diagram is as follows:

$$\mathbf{\cdot\overset{\cdot}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{Se}}:}$$

Exercise 2.9.1

What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element?

a. phosphorus
b. argon

Answer

$$\mathbf{\cdot\overset{\cdot}{\underset{\cdot}{P}}:}$$

$$\mathbf{:\overset{\cdot\cdot}{\underset{\cdot\cdot}{Ar}}:}$$

Elements in the same column of the periodic table have similar Lewis electron dot diagrams because they have the same valence shell electron configuration. The electron dot diagrams for the first column of elements are as follows:

$$\mathbf{H\cdot\quad Li\cdot\quad Na\cdot\quad K\cdot\quad Rb\cdot\quad Cs\cdot}$$

Monatomic ions are atoms that have either lost (for cations) or gained (for anions) electrons. Electron dot diagrams for ions are the same as for atoms, except that some electrons have been removed for cations, while some electrons have been added for anions. Thus, in comparing the electron configurations and electron dot diagrams for the Na atom and the Na^+ ion, we note that the Na atom has a single valence electron in its Lewis diagram, while the Na^+ ion has lost that one valence electron:

$$\text{Lewis dot diagram}:\quad \mathbf{Na\cdot}\qquad Na^+$$

$$\text{Electron configuration}:\quad [Ne]\,3s^1\qquad [Ne]$$

Technically, the valence shell of the Na^+ ion is now the n = 2 shell, which has eight electrons in it. So why do we not put eight dots around Na^+? Conventionally, when we show electron dot diagrams for ions, we show the original valence shell of the atom, which in this case is the n = 3 shell and empty in the Na^+ ion.

In making cations, electrons are first lost from the *highest numbered shell*, not necessarily the last subshell filled. For example, in going from the neutral Fe atom to the Fe^{2+} ion, the Fe atom loses its two 4s electrons first, not its 3d electrons, despite the fact that the 3d subshell is the last subshell being filled. Thus, we have

$$\text{Lewis dot diagram}:\quad \mathbf{Fe\ :}\qquad Fe^{2+}$$

$$\text{Electron configuration}: \quad [Ar]\,4s^2 3d^6 \quad [Ar]\,3d^6$$

Anions have extra electrons when compared to the original atom. Here is a comparison of the Cl atom with the Cl$^-$ ion:

$$\text{Lewis dot diagram}: \quad \mathbf{:\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{Cl}}\cdot} \quad \mathbf{:\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{Cl}}:}^{-}$$

$$\text{Electron configuration}: \quad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^5 \quad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^6$$

Example 2.9.2

What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for each ion?

a. Ca^{2+}
b. O^{2-}

Solution

a. Having lost its two original valence electrons, the Lewis electron dot diagram is simply: Ca^{2+}
b. The O^{2-} ion has gained two electrons in its valence shell, so its Lewis electron dot diagram is as follows:

$$\mathbf{:\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{O}}:}^{2-}$$

Exercise 2.9.2

The electronic configuration of the thallium ion is $6s^2 4f^{14} 5d^{10}$. What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for the Tl$^+$ ion?

Answer

$$\mathbf{Tl:}^{+}$$

Summary

- Lewis electron dot diagrams use dots to represent valence electrons around an atomic symbol.
- Lewis electron dot diagrams for ions have less (for cations) or more (for anions) dots than the corresponding atom.

2.10: Electron Transfer - Ionic Bonds

Learning Objectives

- State the octet rule.
- Define *ionic bond*.
- Demonstrate electron transfer between atoms to form ionic bonds.

In Section 9.2, we saw how ions are formed by losing electrons to make cations, or by gaining electrons to form anions. The astute reader may have noticed something: many of the ions that form have eight electrons in their valence shell. Either atoms gain enough electrons to have eight electrons in the valence shell and become the appropriately charged anion, or they lose the electrons in their original valence shell. In the case of electron loss, the *lower* shell, now the valence shell, has eight electrons in it; so the atom becomes positively charged. For whatever reason, having eight electrons in a valence shell is a particularly energetically stable arrangement of electrons. The trend that atoms like to have eight electrons in their valence shell is called the **octet rule**. When atoms form compounds, the octet rule is not always satisfied for all atoms at all times, but it is a very good rule of thumb for understanding the kinds of bonding arrangements that atoms can make.

It is not impossible to violate the octet rule. Consider sodium: in its elemental form, it has one valence electron and is stable. It is rather reactive, however, and does not require a lot of energy to remove that electron to make the Na^+ ion. We *could* remove another electron by adding even more energy to the ion to make the Na^{2+} ion. However, that requires much more energy than is normally available in chemical reactions, so sodium stops at a 1+ charge after losing a single electron. It turns out that the Na^+ ion has a complete octet in its new valence shell, the $n = 2$ shell, which satisfies the octet rule. The octet rule is a result of trends in energies and is useful in explaining why atoms form the ions that they do.

Consider an Na atom in the presence of a Cl atom. The two atoms have these Lewis electron dot diagrams and electron configurations:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \qquad \cdot\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}$$

$$[Ne]\,3s^1 \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^5$$

For the Na atom to obtain an octet, it must lose an electron; for the Cl atom to obtain an octet, it must gain an electron. An electron transfers from the Na atom to the Cl atom:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \curvearrowright \cdot\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}$$

resulting in two ions—the Na^+ ion and the Cl^- ion:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot^{+} \qquad \mathbf{:}\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}^{-}$$

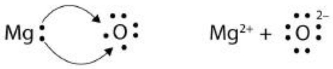
$$[Ne] \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^6$$

Both species now have complete octets, and the electron shells are energetically stable. From basic physics, we know that opposite charges attract. This is what happens to the Na^+ and Cl^- ions:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot^{+} + \mathbf{:}\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}^{-} \rightarrow Na^+Cl^- \quad or \quad NaCl$$

where we have written the final formula (the formula for sodium chloride) as per the convention for ionic compounds, without listing the charges explicitly. The attraction between oppositely charged ions is called an **ionic bond,** and it is one of the main types of chemical bonds in chemistry. Ionic bonds are caused by electrons *transferring* from one atom to another.

In electron transfer, the number of electrons lost must equal the number of electrons gained. We saw this in the formation of NaCl. A similar process occurs between Mg atoms and O atoms, except in this case two electrons are transferred:



The two ions each have octets as their valence shell, and the two oppositely charged particles attract, making an ionic bond:

$$\mathbf{Mg}^{2+} + \mathbf{:}\underset{\cdot\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{O}}}\mathbf{:}^{2-} \quad Mg^{2+}O^{2-} \ or \ MgO$$

Remember, in the final formula for the ionic compound, we do not write the charges on the ions.

What about when an Na atom interacts with an O atom? The O atom needs two electrons to complete its valence octet, but the Na atom supplies only one electron:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \curvearrowright \cdot\underset{\cdot}{\ddot{\mathbf{O}}}\mathbf{:}$$

The O atom still does not have an octet of electrons. What we need is a second Na atom to donate a second electron to the O atom:

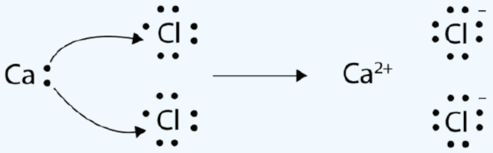
These three ions attract each other to form an overall neutrally charged ionic compound, which we write as Na_2O. The need for the number of electrons lost to be equal to the number of electrons gained explains why ionic compounds have the ratio of cations to anions that they do. This is also required by the law of conservation of matter.

Example 2.10.1

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form calcium chloride from Ca atoms and Cl atoms.

Solution

A Ca atom has two valence electrons, while a Cl atom has seven electrons. A Cl atom needs only one more to complete its octet, while Ca atoms have two electrons to lose. We need two Cl atoms to accept the two electrons from one Ca atom. The transfer process is as follows:

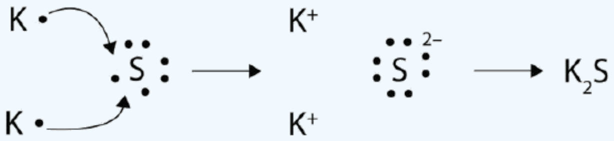


The oppositely charged ions attract one another to make $CaCl_2$.

Exercise 2.10.1

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form potassium sulfide from K atoms and S atoms.

Answer



The strength of ionic bonding depends on two major characteristics: the magnitude of the charges and the size of the ion. The greater the magnitude of the charge, the stronger the ionic bond. The smaller the ion, the stronger the ionic bond (because a smaller ion size allows the ions to get closer together). The measured strength of ionic bonding is called the **lattice energy**. Some lattice energies are given in Table 2.10.1 - Lattice Energies of Some Ionic Compounds.

Table 2.10.1: Lattice Energies of Some Ionic Compounds

Compound	Lattice Energy (kJ/mol)
LiF	1,036

Compound	Lattice Energy (kJ/mol)
LiCl	853
NaCl	786
NaBr	747
MgF_2	2,957
Na_2O	2,481
MgO	3,791

Chemistry is Everywhere: Salt

The element sodium (part [a] in the accompanying figure) is a very reactive metal; given the opportunity, it will react with the sweat on your hands and form sodium hydroxide, which is a very corrosive substance. The element chlorine (part [b] in the accompanying figure) is a pale yellow, corrosive gas that should not be inhaled due to its poisonous nature. Bring these two hazardous substances together, however, and they react to make the ionic compound sodium chloride (part [c] in the accompanying figure), known simply as salt.

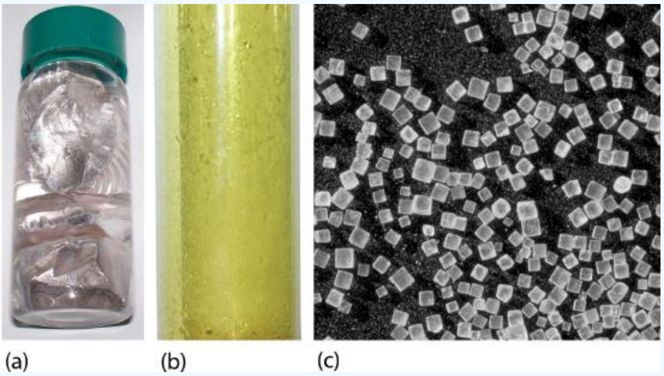


Figure 2.10.1: Sodium + Chlorine = Sodium Chloride. (a) Sodium is a very reactive metal. (b) Chlorine is a pale yellow, noxious gas. (c) Together, sodium and chlorine make sodium chloride—salt—which is necessary for our survival. Source: Photo on the left courtesy of Greenhorn1. Photo in the center courtesy of Benjah-bmm27. Photo on the right © Thinkstock.

Salt is necessary for life. Na^+ ions are one of the main ions in the human body and are necessary to regulate the fluid balance in the body. Cl^- ions are necessary for proper nerve function and respiration. Both of these ions are supplied by salt. The taste of salt is one of the fundamental tastes; salt is probably the most ancient flavoring known, and one of the few rocks we eat.

The health effects of too much salt are still under debate, although a 2010 report by the US Department of Agriculture concluded that "excessive sodium intake…raises blood pressure, a well-accepted and extraordinarily common risk factor for stroke, coronary heart disease, and kidney disease" (US Department of Agriculture Committee for Nutrition Policy and Promotion, *Report of the Dietary Guidelines Advisory Committee on the Dietary Guidelines for Americans*, accessed January 5, 2010). It is clear that most people ingest more salt than their bodies need, and most nutritionists recommend curbing salt intake. Curiously, people who suffer from low salt (called *hyponatria*) do so not because they ingest too little salt, but because they drink too much water. Endurance athletes and others involved in extended strenuous exercise need to watch their water intake so that their body's salt content is not diluted to dangerous levels.

Summary

- The tendency to form species that have eight electrons in the valence shell is called the octet rule.
- The attraction of oppositely charged ions caused by electron transfer is called an ionic bond.
- The strength of ionic bonding depends on the magnitude of the charges and the sizes of the ions.

2.11: Covalent Bonds

Learning Objectives

- Define *covalent bond*.
- Illustrate covalent bond formation with Lewis electron dot diagrams.

Ionic bonding typically occurs when it is easy for one atom to lose one or more electrons, and for another atom to gain one or more electrons. However, some atoms will not give up or gain electrons easily. Yet they still participate in compound formation. How? There is another mechanism for obtaining a complete valence shell: *sharing* electrons. When electrons are shared between two atoms, they form a **covalent bond**.

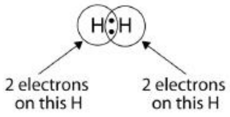
Let us illustrate a covalent bond by using H atoms, with the understanding that H atoms need only two electrons to fill the 1*s* subshell. Each H atom starts with a single electron in its valence shell:

$$\mathbf{H}\cdot \quad \cdot\mathbf{H}$$

The two H atoms can share their electrons:

$$\mathbf{H:H}$$

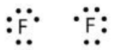
We can use circles to show that each H atom has two electrons around the nucleus, completely filling each atom's valence shell:



Because each H atom has a filled valence shell, this bond is stable, and we have made a diatomic hydrogen molecule. (This explains why hydrogen is one of the diatomic elements.) For simplicity's sake, it is not unusual to represent the covalent bond with a dash, instead of with two dots:

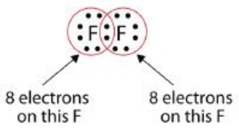
H–H

Because two atoms are sharing one pair of electrons, this covalent bond is called a **single bond**. As another example, consider fluorine. F atoms have seven electrons in their valence shell:

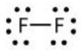


These two atoms can do the same thing that the H atoms did; they share their unpaired electrons to make a covalent bond.

Note that each F atom has a complete octet around it now:



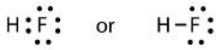
We can also write this using a dash to represent the shared electron pair:



There are two different types of electrons in the fluorine diatomic molecule. The **bonding electron pair** makes the covalent bond. Each F atom has three other pairs of electrons that do not participate in the bonding; they are called **lone pair electrons**. Each F atom has one bonding pair and three lone pairs of electrons.

Covalent bonds can be made between different elements as well. One example is HF. Each atom starts out with an odd number of electrons in its valence shell:

The two atoms can share their unpaired electrons to make a covalent bond:



Note that the H atom has a full valence shell with two electrons, while the F atom has a complete octet of electrons.

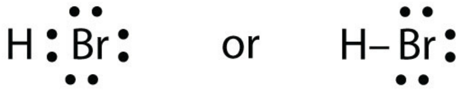
Example 2.11.1

Use Lewis electron dot diagrams to illustrate the covalent bond formation in HBr.

Solution

HBr is very similar to HF, except that it has Br instead of F. The atoms are as follows:

The two atoms can share their unpaired electron:

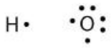


Exercise 2.11.1

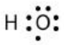
Use Lewis electron dot diagrams to illustrate the covalent bond formation in Cl_2.

Answer

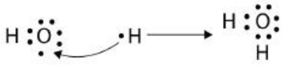
More than two atoms can participate in covalent bonding, although any given covalent bond will be between two atoms only. Consider H and O atoms:



The H and O atoms can share an electron to form a covalent bond:



The H atom has a complete valence shell. However, the O atom has only seven electrons around it, which is not a complete octet. This can be fixed by including a second H atom, whose single electron will make a second covalent bond with the O atom:



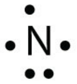
(It does not matter what side the second H atom is positioned on.) Now the O atom has a complete octet around it, and each H atom has two electrons, filling its valence shell. This is how a water molecule, H_2O, is made.

✓ Example 2.11.2

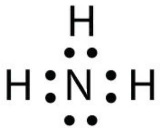
Use a Lewis electron dot diagram to show the covalent bonding in NH_3.

Solution

The N atom has the following Lewis electron dot diagram:



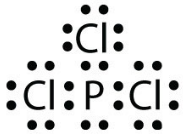
It has three unpaired electrons, each of which can make a covalent bond by sharing electrons with an H atom. The electron dot diagram of NH_3 is as follows:



? Exercise 2.11.2

Use a Lewis electron dot diagram to show the covalent bonding in PCl_3.

Answer



There is a simple set of steps for determining the Lewis electron dot diagram of a simple molecule. First, you must identify the central atom and the surrounding atoms. The **central atom** is the atom in the center of the molecule, while the **surrounding atoms** are the atoms making bonds to the central atom. The central atom is usually written first in the formula of the compound (H_2O is the notable exception). After the central and surrounding atoms have been identified, follow these steps:

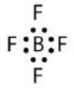
1. Count the total number of valence electrons. Add extra if the species has negative charges and remove some for every positive charge on the species.
2. Write the central atom and surround it with the surrounding atoms.
3. Put a pair of electrons between the central atom and each surrounding atom.
4. Complete the octets around the surrounding atoms (except for H).
5. Put remaining electrons, if any, around the central atom.
6. Check that every atom has a full valence shell.

Let us try these steps to determine the electron dot diagram for BF_4^-. The B atom is the central atom, and the F atoms are the surrounding atoms. There is a negative sign on the species, so we have an extra electron to consider.

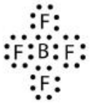
1. **Count the total number of electrons.** B has 3, each F has 7, and there is one extra electron: 3 + 7 + 7 + 7 + 7 + 1 = 32.

2. **Write the central atom surrounded by surrounding atoms.**

3. **Put a pair of electrons between the central atom and each surrounding atom.** This uses up eight electrons, so we have 32 − 8 = 24 electrons left.



4. **Complete the octets around the surrounding atoms (except for H).** This uses up 24 more electrons, leaving 24 − 24 = 0 electrons left.



5. **Put remaining electrons, if any, around the central atom.** There are no additional electrons to add to the central atom.

6. **Check.** The B atom has eight electrons around it, as does each F atom. Each atom has a complete octet. This is a good Lewis electron dot diagram for BF_4^-.

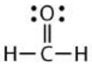
Sometimes, however, these steps do not work. If we were to follow these steps for the compound formaldehyde (CH_2O), we would get the following:

The H and O atoms have the proper number of electrons, but the C atom only has six electrons around it, not the eight electrons for an octet. How do we fix this?

We fix this by recognizing that two atoms can share more than one pair of electrons. In the case of CH_2O, the O and C atoms share two pairs of electrons, with the following Lewis electron dot diagram as a result:

By circling the electrons around each atom, we can now see that the O and C atoms have octets, while each H atom has two electrons:

Each valence shell is full, so this is an acceptable Lewis electron dot diagram. If we were to use lines to represent the bonds, we would use two lines between the C and O atoms:



The bond between the C and O atoms is a **double bond** and represents two bonding pairs of electrons between the atoms. If the rules for drawing Lewis electron dot diagrams do not work as written, a double bond may be required.

✓ Example 2.11.3: Carbon Dioxide

What is the proper Lewis electron dot diagram for CO_2?

Solution

The central atom is a C atom, with O atoms as surrounding atoms. We have a total of 4 + 6 + 6 = 16 valence electrons. Following the rules for Lewis electron dot diagrams for compounds gives us

The O atoms have complete octets around them, but the C atom only has four electrons around it. The way to solve this dilemma is to make a double bond between carbon and *each* O atom:

Each O atom still has eight electrons around it, but now the C atom also has a complete octet. This is an acceptable Lewis electron dot diagram for CO_2.

Exercise 2.11.3

What is the proper Lewis electron dot diagram for carbonyl sulfide (COS)?

Answer

It is also possible to have a **triple bond,** in which there are three pairs of electrons between two atoms. Good examples of this are elemental nitrogen (N_2) and acetylene (C_2H_2):

Acetylene is an interesting example of a molecule with two central atoms, which are both C atoms. Polyatomic ions are bonded together with covalent bonds. Because they are ions, however, they participate in ionic bonding with other ions. So both major types of bonding can occur at the same time.

Food and Drink Application: Vitamins and Minerals

Vitamins are nutrients that our bodies need in small amounts but cannot synthesize; therefore, they must be obtained from the diet. The word *vitamin* comes from "vital amine" because it was once thought that all these compounds had an amine group (NH_2) in it. This is not actually true, but the name stuck anyway.

All vitamins are covalently bonded molecules. Most of them are commonly named with a letter, although all of them also have formal chemical names. Thus vitamin A is also called retinol, vitamin C is called ascorbic acid, and vitamin E is called tocopherol. There is no single vitamin B; there is a group of substances called the *B complex vitamins* that are all water soluble and participate in cell metabolism. If a diet is lacking in a vitamin, diseases such as scurvy or rickets develop. Luckily, all vitamins are available as supplements, so any dietary deficiency in a vitamin can be easily corrected.

A mineral is any chemical element other than carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, or nitrogen that is needed by the body. Minerals that the body needs in quantity include sodium, potassium, magnesium, calcium, phosphorus, sulfur, and chlorine. Essential minerals that the body needs in tiny quantities (so-called *trace elements*) include manganese, iron, cobalt, nickel, copper, zinc, molybdenum, selenium, and iodine. Minerals are also obtained from the diet. Interestingly, most minerals are consumed in ionic form, rather than as elements or from covalent molecules. Like vitamins, most minerals are available in pill form, so any deficiency can be compensated for by taking supplements.

Supplement Facts

Serving Size 1 Tablet

Each Tablet Contains	% Daily Value
Vitamin A 5000 I.U (50% as Beta Carotene)	100%
Vitamin C 60 mg	100%
Vitamin D 400 I.U.	100%
Vitamin E 30 I.U.	100%
Vitamin K 25 mcg	31%
Thiamin (Vitamin B1) 1.5 mg	100%
Riboflavin (Vitamin B2) 1.7 mg	100%
Niacin 20 mg	100%
Vitamin B6 2 mg	100%
Folic Acid 400 mcg	100%
Vitamin B12 6 mcg	100%
Biotin 30 mcg	10%
Pantothenic Acid 10 mg	100%
Calcium 160 mg	16%
Iron 18 mg	100%
Phosphorus 110 mg	11%
Iodine 150 mcg	100%
Magnesium 100 mg	25%
Zinc 15 mg	100%
Selenium 20 mcg	29%
Copper 2 mg	100%
Manganese 2 mg	100%
Chromium 120 mcg	100%
Molybdenum 75 mcg	100%
Chloride 72 mg	2%
Potassium 80 mg	2%
Boron 150 mcg	*
Nickel 5 mcg	*
Silicon 2 mg	*
Tin 10 mcg	*
Vanadium 10 mcg	*
Lutein 250 mcg	*

* Daily Value (DV) not stablished

Figure 2.11.1: Vitamin and Mineral supplements. Every entry down through pantothenic acid is a vitamin, and everything from calcium and below is a mineral.

Summary

- Covalent bonds are formed when atoms share electrons.
- Lewis electron dot diagrams can be drawn to illustrate covalent bond formation.
- Double bonds or triple bonds between atoms may be necessary to properly illustrate the bonding in some molecules.

2.12: Other Aspects of Covalent Bonds

Learning Objectives

- Describe a nonpolar bond and a polar bond.
- Use electronegativity to determine whether a bond between two elements will be nonpolar covalent, polar covalent, or ionic.
- Describe the bond energy of a covalent bond.

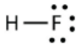
Consider the H_2 molecule:

$$\mathbf{H:H}$$

Because the nuclei of each H atom contain protons, the electrons in the bond are attracted to the nuclei (opposite charges attract). But because the two atoms involved in the covalent bond are both H atoms, each nucleus attracts the electrons by the same amount. Thus the electron pair is equally shared by the two atoms. The equal sharing of electrons in a covalent bond is called a **nonpolar covalent bond**.

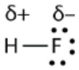
Now consider the HF molecule:

There are two different atoms involved in the covalent bond. The H atom has one proton in its nucleus that is attracting the bonding pair of electrons. However, the F atom has nine protons in its nucleus, with nine times the attraction of the H atom. The F atom attracts the electrons so much more strongly that the electrons remain closer to the F atom than to the H atom; the electrons are no longer equally balanced between the two nuclei. Instead of representing the HF molecule as



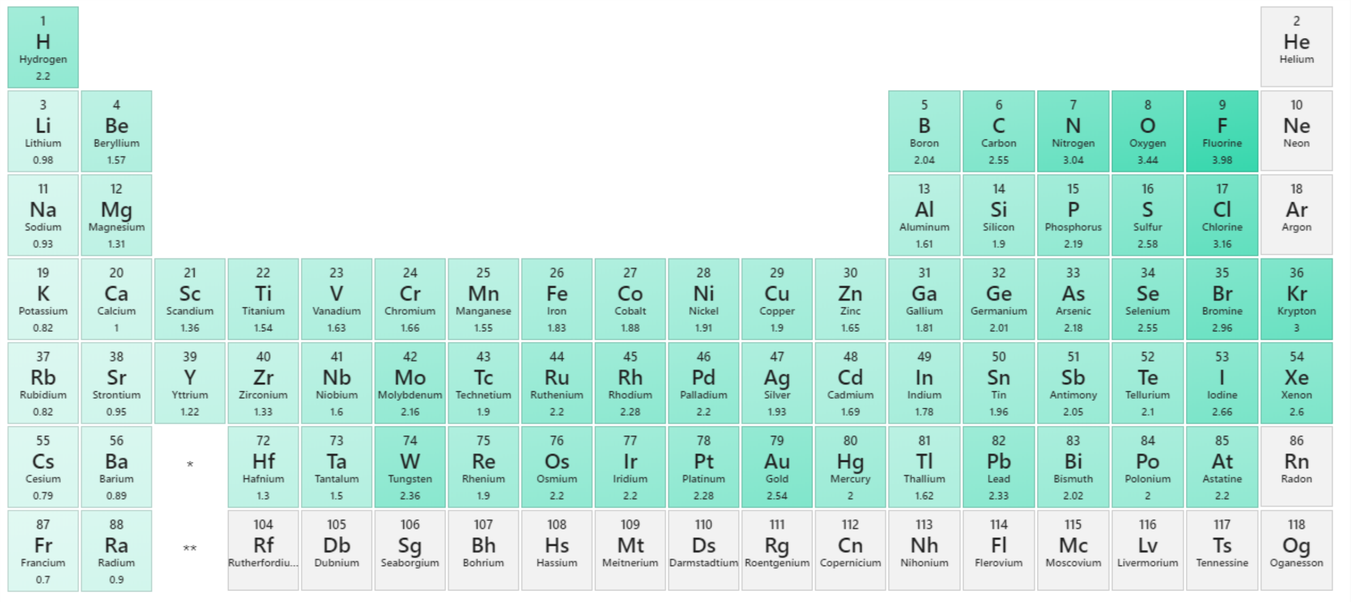
it may be more appropriate to draw the covalent bond as

with the electrons in the bond being nearer to the F atom than the H atom. Because the electrons in the bond are nearer to the F atom, this side of the molecule takes on a partial negative charge, which is represented by δ− (δ is the lowercase Greek letter delta). The other side of the molecule, the H atom, adopts a partial positive charge, which is represented by δ+:



A covalent bond between different atoms that attract the shared electrons by different amounts, and cause an imbalance of electron distribution is called a **polar covalent bond**.

Technically, any covalent bond between two different elements is polar. However, the degree of polarity is important. A covalent bond between two different elements may be so slightly unbalanced that the bond is, essentially, nonpolar. A bond may be so polar that an electron actually transfers from one atom to another, forming a true ionic bond. How do we judge the degree of polarity? Scientists have devised a scale called **electronegativity**, a scale for judging how strongly atoms of any element attract electrons. Electronegativity is a unitless number; the higher the number, the more an atom attracts electrons. A common scale for electronegativity is shown in Figure $2.12.1$.



1 H Hydrogen 2.2																	2 He Helium
3 Li Lithium 0.98	4 Be Beryllium 1.57											5 B Boron 2.04	6 C Carbon 2.55	7 N Nitrogen 3.04	8 O Oxygen 3.44	9 F Fluorine 3.98	10 Ne Neon
11 Na Sodium 0.93	12 Mg Magnesium 1.31											13 Al Aluminum 1.61	14 Si Silicon 1.9	15 P Phosphorus 2.19	16 S Sulfur 2.58	17 Cl Chlorine 3.16	18 Ar Argon
19 K Potassium 0.82	20 Ca Calcium 1	21 Sc Scandium 1.36	22 Ti Titanium 1.54	23 V Vanadium 1.63	24 Cr Chromium 1.66	25 Mn Manganese 1.55	26 Fe Iron 1.83	27 Co Cobalt 1.88	28 Ni Nickel 1.91	29 Cu Copper 1.9	30 Zn Zinc 1.65	31 Ga Gallium 1.81	32 Ge Germanium 2.01	33 As Arsenic 2.18	34 Se Selenium 2.55	35 Br Bromine 2.96	36 Kr Krypton 3
37 Rb Rubidium 0.82	38 Sr Strontium 0.95	39 Y Yttrium 1.22	40 Zr Zirconium 1.33	41 Nb Niobium 1.6	42 Mo Molybdenum 2.16	43 Tc Technetium 1.9	44 Ru Ruthenium 2.2	45 Rh Rhodium 2.28	46 Pd Palladium 2.2	47 Ag Silver 1.93	48 Cd Cadmium 1.69	49 In Indium 1.78	50 Sn Tin 1.96	51 Sb Antimony 2.05	52 Te Tellurium 2.1	53 I Iodine 2.66	54 Xe Xenon 2.6
55 Cs Cesium 0.79	56 Ba Barium 0.89	*	72 Hf Hafnium 1.3	73 Ta Tantalum 1.5	74 W Tungsten 2.36	75 Re Rhenium 1.9	76 Os Osmium 2.2	77 Ir Iridium 2.2	78 Pt Platinum 2.28	79 Au Gold 2.54	80 Hg Mercury 2	81 Tl Thallium 1.62	82 Pb Lead 2.33	83 Bi Bismuth 2.02	84 Po Polonium 2	85 At Astatine 2.2	86 Rn Radon
87 Fr Francium 0.7	88 Ra Radium 0.9	**	104 Rf Rutherfordiu...	105 Db Dubnium	106 Sg Seaborgium	107 Bh Bohrium	108 Hs Hassium	109 Mt Meitnerium	110 Ds Darmstadtium	111 Rg Roentgenium	112 Cn Copernicium	113 Nh Nihonium	114 Fl Flerovium	115 Mc Moscovium	116 Lv Livermorium	117 Ts Tennessine	118 Og Oganesson

Figure 2.12.1: Electronegativities of the Elements. Electronegativity is used to determine the polarity of covalent bonds. The more electronegative elements are in the upper right of the table (more colored), while the less electronegative are in the lower left (less colored).

The polarity of a covalent bond can be judged by determining the *difference* of the electronegativities of the two atoms involved in the covalent bond, as summarized in the following table:

Table with two columns and four rows. The first column on the left has different values underneath in the row. The second column on the right side has the corresponding bond type for the values underneath in the rows.

Electronegativity Difference	Bond Type
0	nonpolar covalent
0–0.4	slightly polar covalent
0.4–1.9	definitely polar covalent
>1.9	likely ionic

✓ Example 2.12.1

What is the polarity of each bond?

a. C–H
b. O–H

Solution

Using Figure 2.12.1, we can calculate the difference of the electronegativities of the atoms involved in the bond.

a. For the C–H bond, the difference in the electronegativities is 2.5 − 2.1 = 0.4. Thus we predict that this bond will be slightly polar covalent.
b. For the O–H bond, the difference in electronegativities is 3.5 − 2.1 = 1.4, so we predict that this bond will be definitely polar covalent.

? Exercise 2.12.1

What is the polarity of each bond?

a. Rb–F
b. P–Cl

Answer a

likely ionic

Answer b

polar covalent

The polarity of a covalent bond can have significant influence on the properties of the substance. If the overall molecule is polar, the substance may have a higher melting point and boiling point than expected; also, it may or may not be soluble in various other substances, such as water or hexane.

It should be obvious that covalent bonds are stable because molecules exist. However, they can be broken if enough energy is supplied to a molecule. For most covalent bonds between any two given atoms, a certain amount of energy must be supplied. Although the exact amount of energy depends on the molecule, the approximate amount of energy to be supplied is similar if the atoms in the bond are the same. The approximate amount of energy needed to break a covalent bond is called the **bond energy** of the covalent bond. Table 2.12.1, lists the bond energies of some covalent bonds.

Table 2.12.1: Bond Energies of Covalent Bonds

Bond	Energy (kJ/mol)		Bond	Energy (kJ/mol)
C–C	348		N–N	163
C=C	611		N=N	418
C≡C	837		N≡N	946
C–O	351		N–H	389
C=O	799		O–O	146
C–Cl	328		O=O	498
C–H	414		O–H	463
F–F	159		S–H	339
H–Cl	431		S=O	523
H–F	569		Si–H	293
H–H	436		Si–O	368

A few trends are obvious from Table 2.12.1. For bonds that involve the same two elements, a double bond is stronger than a single bond, and a triple bond is stronger than a double bond. The energies of multiple bonds are not exact multiples of the single bond energy; for carbon-carbon bonds, the energy increases somewhat less than double or triple the C–C bond energy, while for nitrogen-nitrogen bonds the bond energy increases at a rate greater than the multiple of the N–N single bond energy. The bond energies in Table 2.12.1 are average values; the exact value of the covalent bond energy will vary slightly among molecules with these bonds, but should be close to these values.

To be broken, covalent bonds always require energy; that is, covalent bond breaking is always an *endothermic* process. Thus the ΔH for this process is positive:

$$\text{Molecule–O–H} \rightarrow \text{Molecule–O} + \text{H}$$

$$\text{with } \Delta H \approx +463 \text{ kJ/mol}$$

However, when making a covalent bond, energy is always given off; covalent bond making is always an *exothermic* process. Thus ΔH for this process is negative:

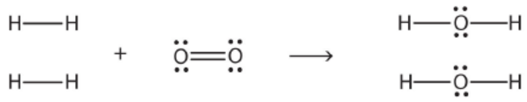
$$\text{Molecule–S} + \text{H} \rightarrow \text{Molecule–S–H}$$

$$\text{with } \Delta H \approx -339 \text{ kJ/mol}$$

Bond energies can be used to estimate the energy change of a chemical reaction. When bonds are broken in the reactants, the energy change for this process is endothermic. When bonds are formed in the products, the energy change for this process is exothermic. We combine the positive energy change with the negative energy change to estimate the overall energy change of the reaction. For example, in

$$2H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O$$

we can draw Lewis electron dot diagrams for each substance to see what bonds are broken and what bonds are formed:



(The lone electron pairs on the O atoms are omitted for clarity.) We are breaking two H–H bonds and one O–O double bond and forming four O–H single bonds. The energy required for breaking the bonds is as follows:

2 H–H bonds:	2(+436 kJ/mol)
1 O=O bond:	+498 kJ/mol
Total:	+1,370 kJ/mol

The energy given off when the four O–H bonds are made is as follows:

4 O–H bonds:	4(−463 kJ/mol)
Total:	−1,852 kJ/mol

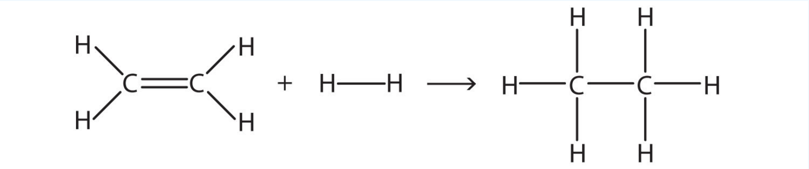
Combining these two numbers:

	+1,370 kJ/mol + (−1,852 kJ/mol)
Net Change:	−482 kJ/mol ≈ ΔH

The actual ΔH is −572 kJ/mol; we are off by about 16%. Although not ideal, a 16% difference is reasonable because we used estimated, not exact, bond energies.

✓ Example 2.12.1

Estimate the energy change of this reaction.



Ethene reacts with hydrogen gas to create ethane. A c-c double bond is broken and two C-H bonds are formed.

Solution

Here, we are breaking a C–C double bond and an H–H single bond and making a C–C single bond and two C–H single bonds. Bond breaking is endothermic, while bond making is exothermic. For the bond breaking:

1 C=C:	+611 kJ/mol
1 H–H:	+436 kJ/mol
Total:	+1,047 kJ/mol

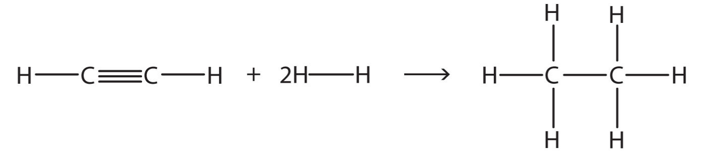
For the bond making:

1 C–C:	−348 kJ/mol
2 C–H:	2(−414 kJ/mol)
Total	−1,176 kJ/mol

Overall, the energy change is +1,047 + (−1,176) = −129 kJ/mol.

Exercise 2.12.1

Estimate the energy change of this reaction.



Summary

- Covalent bonds can be nonpolar or polar, depending on the electronegativities of the atoms involved.
- Covalent bonds can be broken if energy is added to a molecule.
- The formation of covalent bonds is accompanied by energy given off.
- Covalent bond energies can be used to estimate the enthalpy changes of chemical reactions.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Module 3

Organic chemistry is the study of the chemistry of carbon compounds. Why focus on carbon? Carbon has properties that give its chemistry unparalleled complexity. It forms four covalent bonds, which give it great flexibility in bonding. It makes fairly strong bonds with itself (a characteristic called *catenation*), allowing for the formation of large molecules; it also forms fairly strong bonds with other elements, allowing for the possibility of a wide variety of substances. No other element demonstrates the versatility of carbon when it comes to making compounds. So an entire field of chemistry is devoted to the study of the compounds and reactivity of one element.

Because of the potential for complexity, chemists have defined a rather rigorous system to describe the chemistry of carbon. We will introduce some of that system in this chapter. Should you continue your study of chemistry beyond this text, you will find a much larger world of organic chemistry than we can cover in a single chapter.

3.1: Prelude to Organic Chemistry

All life on Earth is ultimately based on photosynthesis. Photosynthesis is the process by which plants absorb CO_2 and H_2O from their environment and, in the presence of sunlight, convert those substances into a simple sugar (glucose) and ultimately starches and other building blocks of life. The net photosynthesis chemical reaction is as follows:

$$6CO_2 + 6H_2O \overset{light}{\rightarrow} C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2$$

Oxygen is also a product of photosynthesis. Most forms of animal life (including people) depend on oxygen to breathe, which makes plants indispensable. Virtually all food sources come from plants, eaten either directly (as fruits, vegetables, or grains) or indirectly (as feedstock for meat animals such as cattle, poultry, pigs, sheep, goats, and the like). Plants are absolutely necessary for life to exist.

Figure 3.1.1: Photosynthesis. In the presence of the sun, plants perform photosynthesis, the chemical reactions that convert CO_2 and H_2O to glucose. The reaction also produces O_2, which is necessary for animal life. Virtually all life on Earth depends on photosynthesis.

The net reaction for photosynthesis is misleadingly simple. A series of reactions, called light-dependent reactions, start by the absorption of light by pigments (not just chlorophyll, as commonly misunderstood) in plant cells. This is followed by a series of light-independent reactions, so named not because they happen in the dark, but because they do not directly involve light. However, light-independent reactions involve the products of reactions stimulated by light, so they ultimately depend on light. The whole series of reactions involves many chemicals, enzymes, breaking and making chemical bonds, the transfer of electrons and H^+ ions, and other chemical processes. The elucidation of the actual steps of photosynthesis—a process still unduplicated artificially—is a major achievement of modern chemistry.

3.2: Hydrocarbons

Learning Objectives

- Identify alkanes, alkenes, alkynes, and aromatic compounds.
- List some properties of hydrocarbons.

The simplest organic compounds are those composed of only two elements: carbon and hydrogen. These compounds are called **hydrocarbons**. Hydrocarbons themselves are separated into two types: aliphatic hydrocarbons and aromatic hydrocarbons.

Aliphatic hydrocarbons are hydrocarbons based on chains of C atoms. There are three types of aliphatic hydrocarbons. **Alkanes** are aliphatic hydrocarbons with only single covalent bonds. **Alkenes** are hydrocarbons that contain at least one C–C double bond, and **Alkynes** are hydrocarbons that contain a C–C triple bond. Occasionally, we find an aliphatic hydrocarbon with a ring of C atoms; these hydrocarbons are called *cycloalkanes* (or *cycloalkenes* or *cycloalkynes*).

Aromatic hydrocarbons have a special six-carbon ring called a *benzene* ring. Electrons in the benzene ring have special energetic properties that give benzene physical and chemical properties that are markedly different from alkanes. Originally, the term *aromatic* was used to describe this class of compounds because they were particularly fragrant. However, in modern chemistry the term *aromatic* denotes the presence of a six-membered ring that imparts different and unique properties to a molecule.

The simplest alkanes have their C atoms bonded in a straight chain; these are called *normal* alkanes. They are named according to the number of C atoms in the chain. The smallest alkane is methane:

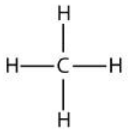


Figure 3.2.1 - Three-Dimensional Representation of Methane.

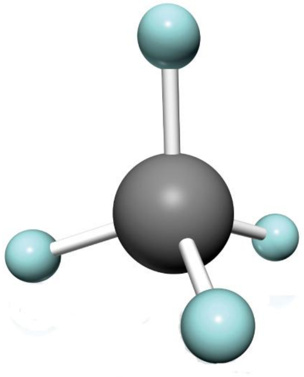
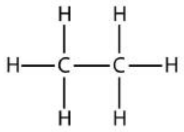
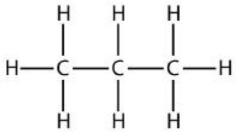


Figure 3.2.1 Three-Dimensional Representation of Methane © Thinkstock. The methane molecule is three dimensional, with the H atoms in the positions of the four corners of a tetrahedron.

The next-largest alkane has two C atoms that are covalently bonded to each other. For each C atom to make four covalent bonds, each C atom must be bonded to three H atoms. The resulting molecule, whose formula is C_2H_6, is ethane:



Propane has a backbone of three C atoms surrounded by H atoms. You should be able to verify that the molecular formula for propane is C_3H_8:



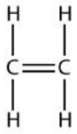
The diagrams representing alkanes are called **structural formulas** because they show the structure of the molecule. As molecules get larger, structural formulas become more and more complex. One way around this is to use a **condensed structural formula**, which lists the formula of each C atom in the backbone of the molecule. For example, the condensed structural formula for ethane is CH_3CH_3, while for propane it is $CH_3CH_2CH_3$. Table 3.2.1 - The First 10 Alkanes, gives the molecular formulas, the condensed structural formulas, and the names of the first 10 alkanes.

Table 3.2.1 The First 10 Alkanes

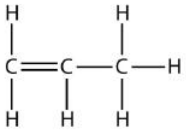
Molecular Formula	**Condensed Structural Formula**	**Name**
CH_4	CH_4	methane
C_2H_6	CH_3CH_3	ethane
C_3H_8	$CH_3CH_2CH_3$	propane
C_4H_{10}	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3$	butane
C_5H_{12}	$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_3$	pentane
C_6H_{14}	$CH_3(CH_2)_4CH_3$	hexane
C_7H_{16}	$CH_3(CH_2)_5CH_3$	heptane
C_8H_{18}	$CH_3(CH_2)_6CH_3$	octane
C_9H_{20}	$CH_3(CH_2)_7CH_3$	nonane
$C_{10}H_{22}$	$CH_3(CH_2)_8CH_3$	decane

Because alkanes have the maximum number of H atoms possible according to the rules of covalent bonds, alkanes are also referred to as **saturated hydrocarbons**.

Alkenes have a C–C double bond. Because they have less than the maximum number of H atoms possible, they are **unsaturated hydrocarbons**. The smallest alkene—ethene—has two C atoms and is also known by its common name ethylene:

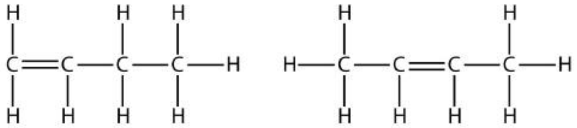


The next largest alkene—propene—has three C atoms with a C–C double bond between two of the C atoms. It is also known as propylene:



What do you notice about the names of alkanes and alkenes? The names of alkenes are the same as their corresponding alkanes except that the ending is *-ene*, rather than *-ane*. Using a stem to indicate the number of C atoms in a molecule and an ending to represent the type of organic compound is common in organic chemistry, as we shall see.

With the introduction of the next alkene, butene, we begin to see a major issue with organic molecules: choices. With four C atoms, the C–C double bond can go between the first and second C atoms or between the second and third C atoms:



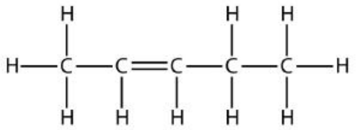
2 structural formulas for butene, with the first butene having the double bond on the first and second carbon from the left and the latter having its double bond on the second and third carbon from the left.

(A double bond between the third and fourth C atoms is the same as having it between the first and second C atoms, only flipped over.) The rules of naming in organic chemistry require that these two substances have different names. The first molecule is named *1-butene*, while the second molecule is named *2-butene*. The number at the beginning of the name indicates where the double bond originates. The lowest possible number is used to number a feature in a molecule; hence, calling the second molecule 3-butene would be incorrect. Numbers are common parts of organic chemical names because they indicate which C atom in a chain contains a distinguishing feature.

The compounds 1-butene and 2-butene have different physical and chemical properties, even though they have the same molecular formula—C_4H_8. Different molecules with the same molecular formula are called **isomers**. Isomers are common in organic chemistry and contribute to its complexity.

✓ Example 3.2.1

Based on the names for the butene molecules, propose a name for this molecule.



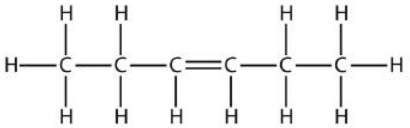
A structural formula of a five carbon molecule with a double bond on the third and fourth carbon from the left. There are ten hydrogen atoms in total.

Solution

With five C atoms, we will use the *pent-* stem, and with a C–C double bond, this is an alkene, so this molecule is a pentene. In numbering the C atoms, we use the number *2* because it is the lower possible label. So this molecule is named 2-pentene.

? Exercise 3.2.1

Based on the names for the butene molecules, propose a name for this molecule.



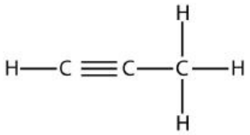
A structural formula of a six carbon molecule with a double bond on the third and fourth carbon from the left. There are twelve hydrogen atoms in total.

Answer

3-hexene

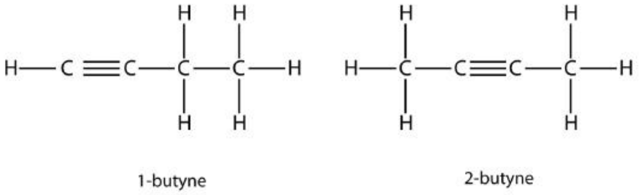
Alkynes, with a C–C triple bond, are named similarly to alkenes except their names end in *-yne*. The smallest alkyne is ethyne, which is also known as acetylene:

Propyne has the structure



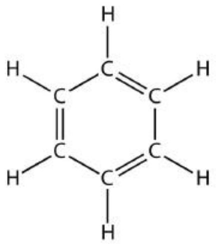
Structural formula showing three carbon molecules with a triple bond present between the first and second carbon atom. The appropriate number of hydrogen atoms is attached to each carbon atom.

With butyne, we need to start numbering the position of the triple bond, just as we did with alkenes:



Two structural formula of butyne. One butyne has a triple bond between the first and second carbon atom, while two butyne has the triple bond between the second and third carbon atom.

Aromatic compounds contain the benzene unit. Benzene itself is composed of six C atoms in a ring, with alternating single and double C–C bonds:



The six carbons are arranged in a hexagon pattern with one hydrogen atom emerging outwards from each carbon atom. The presence of a double bond is alternated between every other carbon atom.

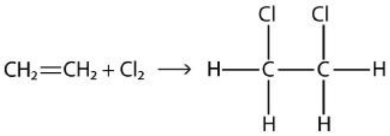
The alternating single and double C–C bonds give the benzene ring a special stability, and it does not react like an alkene as might be suspected. Benzene has the molecular formula C_6H_6; in larger aromatic compounds, a different atom replaces one or more of the H atoms.

As fundamental as hydrocarbons are to organic chemistry, their properties and chemical reactions are rather mundane. Most hydrocarbons are nonpolar because of the close electronegativities of the C and H atoms. As such, they dissolve only sparingly in H_2O and other polar solvents. Small hydrocarbons, such as methane and ethane, are gases at room temperature, while larger hydrocarbons, such as hexane and octane, are liquids. Even larger hydrocarbons are solids at room temperature and have a soft, waxy consistency.

Hydrocarbons are rather unreactive, but they do participate in some classic chemical reactions. One common reaction is substitution with a halogen atom by combining a hydrocarbon with an elemental halogen. Light is sometimes used to promote the reaction, such as this one between methane and chlorine:

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 \overset{light}{\rightarrow} CH_3Cl + HCl$$

Halogens can also react with alkenes and alkynes, but the reaction is different. In these cases, the halogen reacts with the C–C double or triple bond and inserts itself onto each C atom involved in the multiple bonds. This reaction is called an **addition reaction**. One example is



Structural formula showing the reaction of ethylene with a chlorine molecule to form ethylene dichloride.

The reaction conditions are usually mild; in many cases, the halogen reacts spontaneously with an alkene or an alkyne.

Hydrogen can also be added across a multiple bond; this reaction is called a **hydrogenation reaction**. In this case, however, the reaction conditions may not be mild; high pressures of H_2 gas may be necessary. A platinum or palladium catalyst is usually employed to get the reaction to proceed at a reasonable pace:

$$CH_2=CH_2+H_2 \overset{metal\ catalyst}{\rightarrow} CH_3CH_3$$

By far the most common reaction of hydrocarbons is **combustion**, which is the combination of a hydrocarbon with O_2 to make CO_2 and H_2O. The combustion of hydrocarbons is accompanied by a release of energy and is a primary source of energy production in our society (Figure 3.2.2 - Combustion). The combustion reaction for gasoline, for example, which can be represented by C_8H_{18}, is as follows:

$$2C_8H_{18}+25O_2 \rightarrow 16CO_2+18H_2O+\sim 5060kJ$$

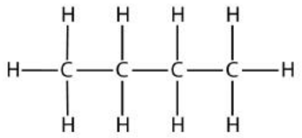
Figure 3.2.2 Combustion © Thinkstock. The combustion of hydrocarbons is a primary source of energy in our society.

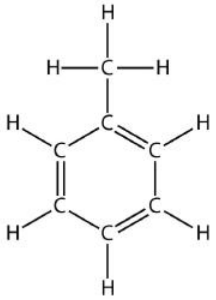
Key Takeaways

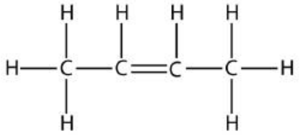
- The simplest organic compounds are hydrocarbons and are composed of carbon and hydrogen.
- Hydrocarbons can be aliphatic or aromatic; aliphatic hydrocarbons are divided into alkanes, alkenes, and alkynes.
- The combustion of hydrocarbons is a primary source of energy for our society.

? Exercise 3.2.2

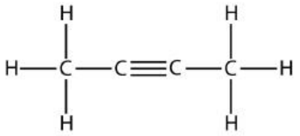
1. Define *hydrocarbon*. What are the two general types of hydrocarbons?
2. What are the three different types of aliphatic hydrocarbons? How are they defined?
3. Indicate whether each molecule is an aliphatic or an aromatic hydrocarbon; if aliphatic, identify the molecule as an alkane, an alkene, or an alkyne.

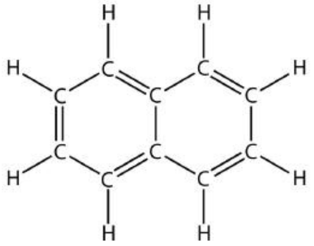
a. 

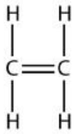
b. 

c. 

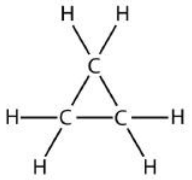
4. Indicate whether each molecule is an aliphatic or an aromatic hydrocarbon; if aliphatic, identify the molecule as an alkane, an alkene, or an alkyne.

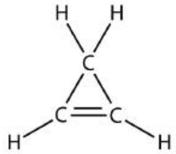
   a. 

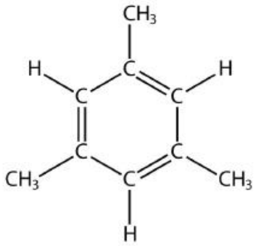
   b. 

   c. 

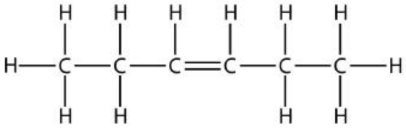
5. Indicate whether each molecule is an aliphatic or an aromatic hydrocarbon; if aliphatic, identify the molecule as an alkane, an alkene, or an alkyne.

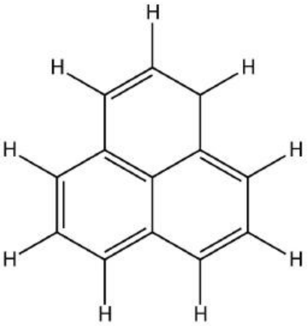
   a. 

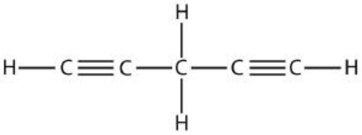
b. 

c. 

6. Indicate whether each molecule is an aliphatic or an aromatic hydrocarbon; if aliphatic, identify the molecule as an alkane, an alkene, or an alkyne.

a. 

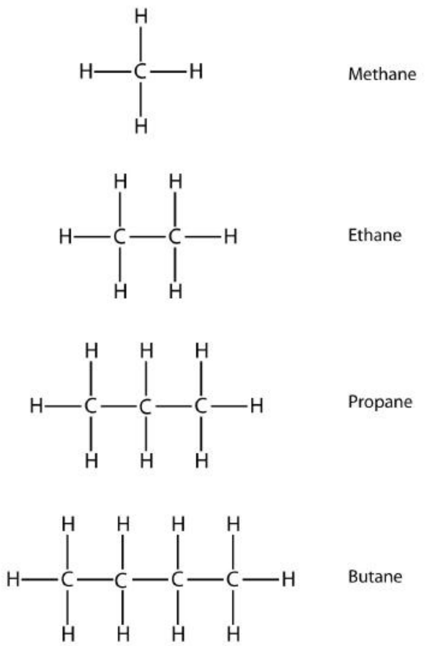
b. 

c. 

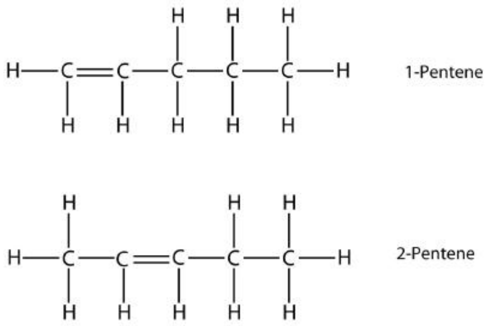
7. Name and draw the structural formulas for the four smallest alkanes.
8. Name and draw the structural formulas for the four smallest alkenes.
9. What does the term *aromatic* imply about an organic molecule?
10. What does the term *normal* imply when used for alkanes?
11. Explain why the name *1-propene* is incorrect. What is the proper name for this molecule?
12. Explain why the name *3-butene* is incorrect. What is the proper name for this molecule?
13. Name and draw the structural formula of each isomer of pentene.
14. Name and draw the structural formula of each isomer of hexyne.
15. Write a chemical equation for the reaction between methane and bromine.
16. Write a chemical equation for the reaction between ethane and chlorine.
17. Draw the structure of the product of the reaction of bromine with propene.
18. Draw the structure of the product of the reaction of chlorine with 2-butene.
19. Draw the structure of the product of the reaction of hydrogen with 1-butene.
20. Draw the structure of the product of the reaction of hydrogen with 1-butene.
21. Write the balanced chemical equation for the combustion of heptane.
22. Write the balanced chemical equation for the combustion of nonane.

Answers

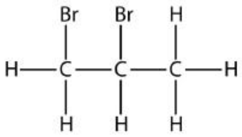
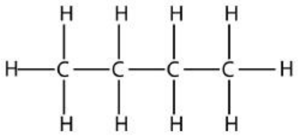
1. an organic compound composed of only carbon and hydrogen; aliphatic hydrocarbons and aromatic hydrocarbons
2.
3. a. aliphatic; alkane
   b. aromatic
   c. aliphatic; alkene
4.
5. a. aliphatic; alkane
   b. aliphatic; alkene
   c. aromatic
6.



7.
8.
9. Aromatic means that the molecule has a benzene ring.
10.
11. The 1 is not necessary. The name of the compound is simply *propene*.
12.



13.
14.
15. $CH_4 + Br_2 \rightarrow CH_3Br + HBr$
16.

17. 
18.
19. 
20.
21. $C_7H_{16} + 11O_2 \rightarrow 7CO_2 + 8H_2O$

3.3: Branched Hydrocarbons

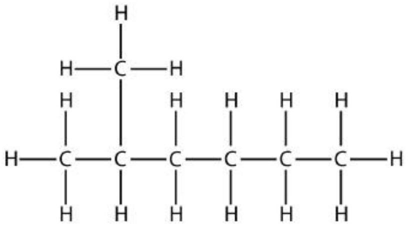
Learning Objectives

- Name a branched hydrocarbon from its structure.
- Draw the structural formula of a branched hydrocarbon from its name.

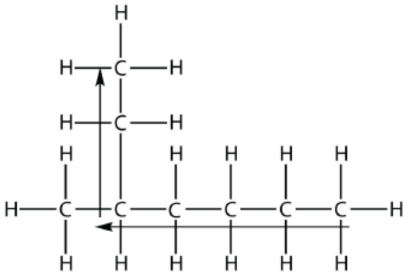
Not all hydrocarbons are straight chains. Many hydrocarbons have branches of C atoms attached to a chain. These branched alkanes are isomers of straight-chain alkanes having the same number of C atoms. However, they are different compounds with different physical and chemical properties. As such, they need different names. How do we name **branched hydrocarbons**?

There are a series of rules for naming branched alkanes (and, ultimately, for all organic compounds). These rules make up the system of **nomenclature** for naming organic molecules. Worldwide, the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) has developed the system of nomenclature for organic compounds. So these rules are sometimes called the *IUPAC rules of nomenclature*. By learning and applying these rules, you can name any organic compound when given its structure or determine the unique structure of a molecule from its name. You have already learned the basics of nomenclature—the names of the first 10 normal hydrocarbons. Here, we will add some steps to the procedure so you can name branched hydrocarbons.

First, given the structure of an alkane, identify the longest continuous chain of C atoms. Note that the longest chain may not be drawn in a straight line. The longest chain determines the parent name of the hydrocarbon. For example, in the molecule



the longest chain of carbons has six C atoms. Therefore, it will be named as a hexane. However, in the molecule



the longest chain of C atoms is not six, but seven, as shown. So this molecule will be named as a heptane.

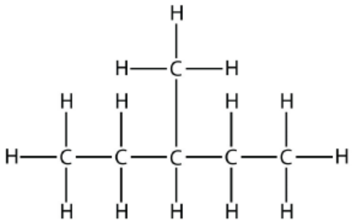
The next step is to identify the branches, or **substituents,** on the main chain. The names of the substituents, or *alkyl groups*, are derived from the names of the parent hydrocarbons; however, rather than having the ending *-ane*, the substituent name has the ending *-yl*. Table $3.3.1$ - Substituent Names, lists the substituent names for the five smallest substituents.

Table 3.3.1 Substituent Names

Substituent Formula	**Number of C Atoms**	**Name of Substituent**
CH_3	1	*methyl-*
CH_3CH_2	2	*ethyl-*
$CH_3CH_2CH_2$	3	*propyl-*
$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2$	4	*butyl-*
$CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2$	5	*pentyl-*

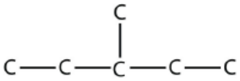
Substituent Formula	Number of C Atoms	Name of Substituent
and so forth	and so forth	and so forth

In naming the branched hydrocarbon, the name of the substituent is combined with the parent name of the hydrocarbon without spaces. However, there is likely one more step. The longest chain of the hydrocarbon must be numbered, and the numerical position of the substituent must be included to account for possible isomers. As with double and triple bonds, the main chain is numbered to give the substituent the lowest possible number. For example, in this alkane



the longest chain is five C atoms long, so it is a pentane. There is a one-carbon substituent on the third C atom, so there is a methyl group at position 3. We indicate the position using the number, which is followed by a hyphen, the substituent name, and the parent hydrocarbon name—in this case, 3-methylpentane. That name is specific to that particular hydrocarbon and no other molecule. Organic chemistry nomenclature is very specific!

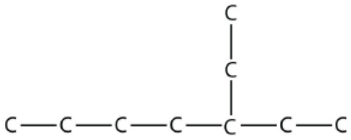
It is common to write the structural formula of a hydrocarbon without the H atoms, for clarity. So we can also represent 3-methylpentane as



where it is understood that any unwritten covalent bonds are bonds with H atoms. With this understanding, we recognize that the structural formula for 3-methylpentane refers to a molecule with the formula of C_6H_{14}.

✓ Example 3.3.1

Name this molecule.

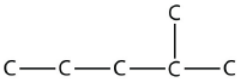


Solution

The longest continuous carbon chain has seven C atoms, so this molecule will be named as a heptane. There is a two-carbon substituent on the main chain, which is an ethyl group. To give the substituent the lowest numbering, we number the chain from the *right* side and see that the substituent is on the third C atom. So this hydrocarbon is 3-ethylheptane.

? Exercise 3.3.1

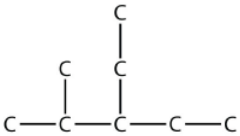
Name this molecule.



Answer

2-methylpentane

Branched hydrocarbons may have more than one substituent. If the substituents are different, then give each substituent a number (using the smallest possible numbers) and list the substituents in alphabetical order, with the numbers separated by hyphens and with no spaces in the name. So the molecule



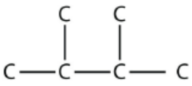
is 3-ethyl-2-methylpentane.

If the substituents are the same, then use the name of the substituent only once, but use more than one number, separated by a comma. Also, put a numerical prefix before the substituent name that indicates the number of substituents of that type. The numerical prefixes are listed in Table 3.3.2 - Numerical Prefixes to Use for Multiple Substituents. The number of the position values must agree with the numerical prefix before the substituent.

Table 3.3.2: Numerical Prefixes to Use for Multiple Substituents

Number of Same Substituent	Numerical Prefix
2	*di-*
3	*tri-*
4	*tetra-*
5	*penta-*
and so forth	and so forth

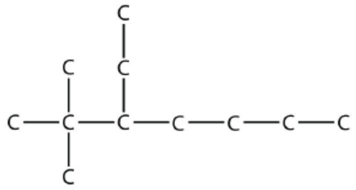
Consider this molecule:



The longest chain has four C atoms, so it is a butane. There are two substituents, each of which consists of a single C atom; they are methyl groups. The methyl groups are on the second and third C atoms in the chain (no matter which end the numbering starts from), so we would name this molecule 2,3-dimethylbutane. Note the comma between the numbers, the hyphen between the numbers and the substituent name, and the presence of the prefix *di-* before the *methyl*. Other molecules—even with larger numbers of substituents—can be named similarly.

✓ Example 3.3.2

Name this molecule.

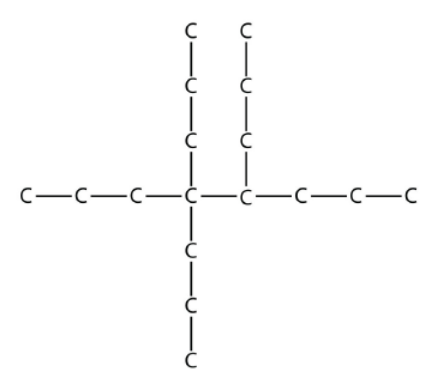


Solution

The longest chain has seven C atoms, so we name this molecule as a heptane. We find two one-carbon substituents on the second C atom and a two-carbon substituent on the third C atom. So this molecule is named 3-ethyl-2,2-dimethylheptane.

? Exercise 3.3.2

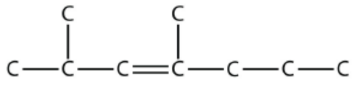
Name this molecule.



Answer

4,4,5-tripropyloctane

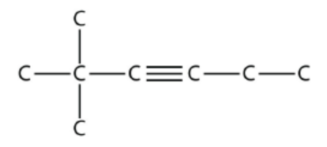
Alkenes and alkynes are named in a similar fashion. The biggest difference is that when identifying the longest carbon chain, it *must* contain the C–C double or triple bond. Furthermore, when numbering the main chain, the double or triple bond gets the lowest possible number. This means that there may be longer or higher-numbered substituents than may be allowed if the molecule were an alkane. For example, this molecule



is 2,4-dimethyl-3-heptene (note the number and the hyphens that indicate the position of the double bond).

✓ Example 3.3.3

Name this molecule.

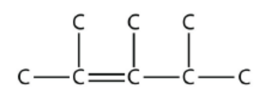


Solution

The longest chain that contains the C–C triple bond has six C atoms, so this is a hexyne molecule. The triple bond starts at the third C atom, so this is a 3-hexyne. Finally, there are two methyl groups on the chain; to give them the lowest possible number, we number the chain from the left side, giving the methyl groups the second position. So the name of this molecule is 2,2-dimethyl-3-hexyne.

? Exercise 3.3.3

Name this molecule.



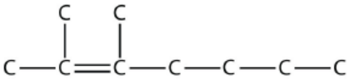
Answer

2,3,4-trimethyl-2-pentene

Once you master naming hydrocarbons from their given structures, it is rather easy to draw a structure from a given name. Just draw the parent chain with the correct number of C atoms (putting the double or triple bond in the right position, as necessary) and add the substituents in the proper positions. If you start by drawing the C atom backbone, you can go back and complete the structure by adding H atoms to give each C atom four covalent bonds. From the name 2,3-dimethyl-4-propyl-2-heptene, we start by drawing the seven-carbon parent chain with a double bond starting at the third carbon:

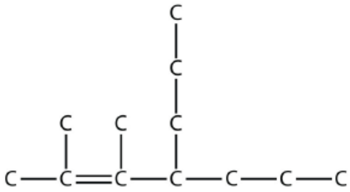
$$\mathrm{C{-}C{=}C{-}C{-}C{-}C{-}C}$$

We add two one-carbon substituents to this structure on the second and third C atoms:



$$\mathrm{C{-}\overset{C}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{C}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}C{-}C{-}C{-}C}$$

We finish the carbon backbone by adding a three-carbon propyl group to the fourth C atom in the parent chain:



If we so choose, we can add H atoms to each C atom to give each carbon four covalent bonds, being careful to note that the C atoms in the double bond already have an additional covalent bond. (How many H atoms do you think are required? There will need to be 24 H atoms to complete the molecule.)

Example 3.3.4

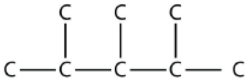
Draw the carbon backbone for 2,3,4-trimethylpentane.

Solution

First, we draw the five-carbon backbone that represents the pentane chain:

$$\mathrm{C{-}C{-}C{-}C{-}C}$$

According to the name, there are three one-carbon methyl groups attached to the second, the third, and the fourth C atoms in the chain. We finish the carbon backbone by putting the three methyl groups on the pentane main chain:

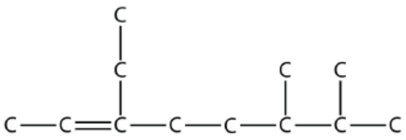


$$\mathrm{C{-}\overset{C}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{C}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{C}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}C}$$

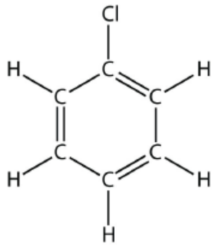
Exercise 3.3.4

Draw the carbon backbone for 3-ethyl-6,7-dimethyl-2-octene.

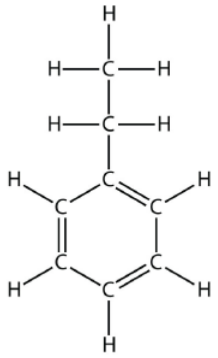
Answer



Naming substituted benzene molecules is straightforward. If there is only one substituent, the substituent is named as a side chain on a benzene molecule, like this:

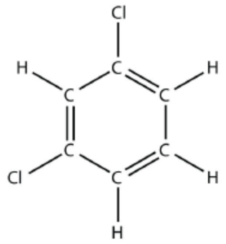


Chlorobenzene

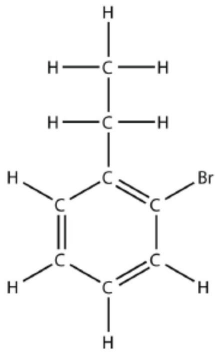


Ethylbenzene

If there are two or more substituents on a benzene molecule, the relative positions must be numbered, just as an aliphatic chain of C atoms is numbered. The substituent that is first alphabetically is assigned position 1, and the ring is numbered in a circle to give the other substituents the lowest possible number(s).

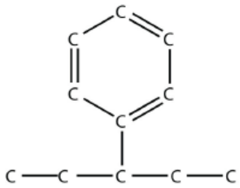


1,3-Dichlorobenzene



1-Bromo-2-ethylbenzene

If a benzene ring is treated as a substituent, it is given the name *phenyl-*. The following molecule is 3-phenylpentane:



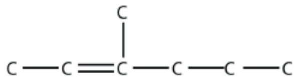
where the H atoms have been omitted for clarity.

Summary

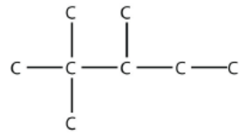
A unique name can be given to branched hydrocarbons. A unique structure can be drawn for the name of a hydrocarbon.

? Exercise 3.3.5

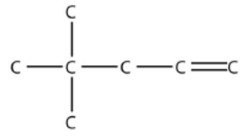
1. How does a branched hydrocarbon differ from a normal hydrocarbon?
2. How does a substituent get its unique name?
3. Name this molecule.



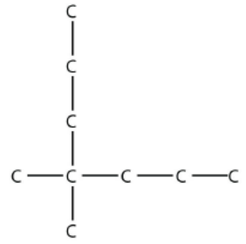
4. Name this molecule.



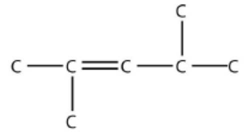
5. Name this molecule.



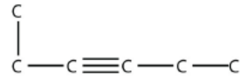
6. Name this molecule.



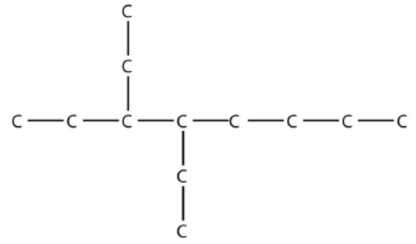
7. Name this molecule.



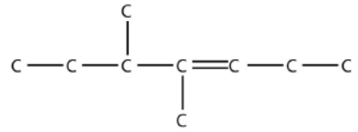
8. Name this molecule.



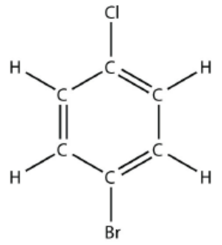
9. Name this molecule.



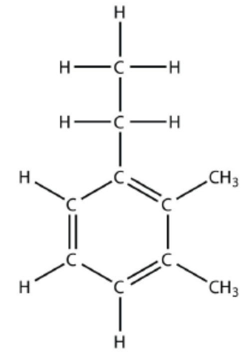
10. Name this molecule.



11. Name this molecule.



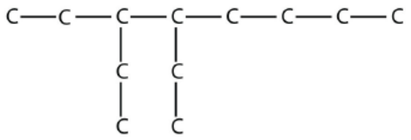
12. Name this molecule.

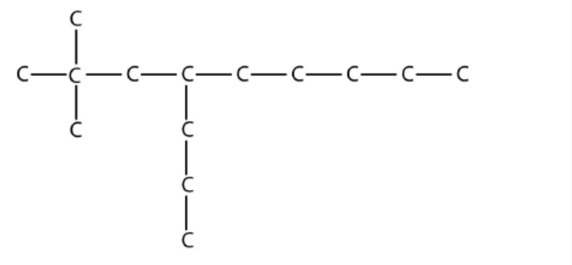


13. Draw the carbon backbone for each molecule.
    a. 3,4-diethyloctane
    b. 2,2-dimethyl-4-propylnonane
14. Draw the carbon backbone for each molecule.
    a. 3-ethyl-4-methyl-3-heptene
    b. 3,3-diethyl-1-pentyne
15. Draw the carbon backbone for each molecule.
    a. 4-ethyl-4-propyl-2-octyne
    b. 5-butyl-2,2-dimethyldecane
16. Draw the carbon backbone for each molecule.
    a. 3,4-diethyl-1-hexyne
    b. 4-propyl-3-ethyl-2-methyloctane
17. The name 2-ethylhexane is incorrect. Draw the carbon backbone and write the correct name for this molecule.
18. The name 3-butyl-7-methyloctane is incorrect. Draw the carbon backbone and write the correct name for this molecule.

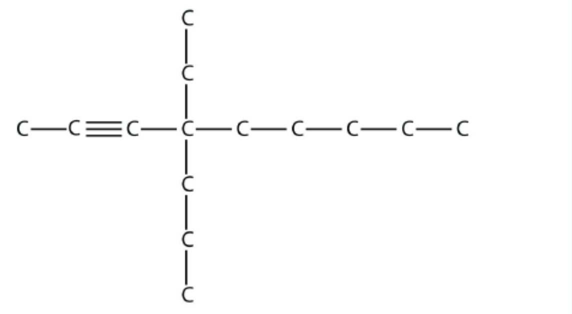
Answers

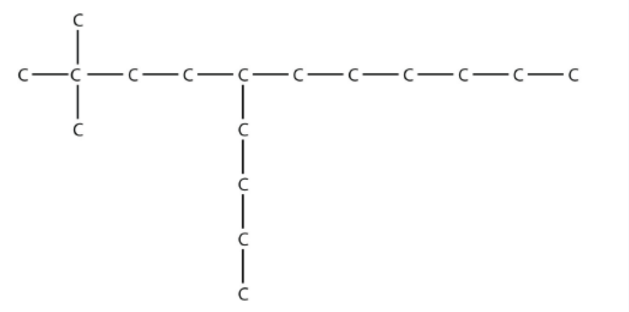
1. A branched hydrocarbon does not have all of its C atoms in a single row.
2.
3. 3-methyl-2-hexene
4.
5. 4,4-dimethyl-1-pentene
6.
7. 2,4-dimethyl-2-pentene
8.
9. 3,4-diethyloctane
10.
11. 1-bromo-4-chlorobenzene
12.
13. a.



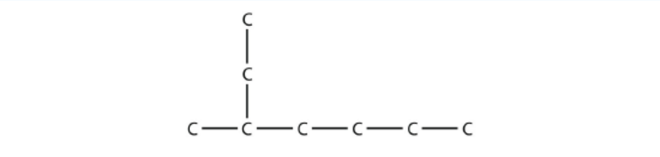
b. 

14.

15. a. 

b. 

16.

17. 

2-methylheptane

3.4: Alkyl Halides and Alcohols

Learning Objectives

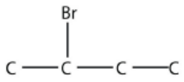
- Define *functional group*.
- Identify and name a simple alkyl halide.
- Identify and name a simple alcohol.
- Predict the product(s) of an elimination reaction of an alkyl halide or an alcohol.

A **functional group** is any collection of atoms and/or bonds with certain characteristic chemical reactions. We have already seen two functional groups: the C–C double bond and the C–C triple bond. They undergo certain characteristic chemical reactions—for example, the addition of a halogen across the multiple bond.

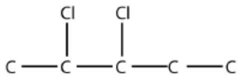
The presence of a halogen atom (F, Cl, Br, or I; also, X is used to represent any halogen atom) is one of the simplest functional groups. Organic compounds that contain a halogen atom are called **alkyl halides.** We have already seen some examples of alkyl halides when the addition of halogens across double and triple bonds was introduced in Section 16.3 - "Branched Hydrocarbons;" the products of these reactions were alkyl halides.

A simple alkyl halide can be named like an ionic salt, first by stating the name of the parent alkane as a substituent group (with the -*yl* suffix) and then the name of the halogen as if it were the anion. So CH_3Cl has the common name of methyl chloride, while CH_3CH_2Br is ethyl bromide and $CH_3CH_2CH_2I$ is propyl iodide. However, this system is not ideal for more complicated alkyl halides.

The systematic way of naming alkyl halides is to name the halogen as a substituent, just like an alkyl group, and use numbers to indicate the position of the halogen atom on the main chain. The name of the halogen as a substituent comes from the stem of the element's name plus the ending -*o*, so the substituent names are *fluoro*-, *chloro*-, *bromo*- and *iodo*-. If there is more than one of a certain halogen, we use numerical prefixes to indicate the number of each kind, just as with alkyl groups. For example, this molecule



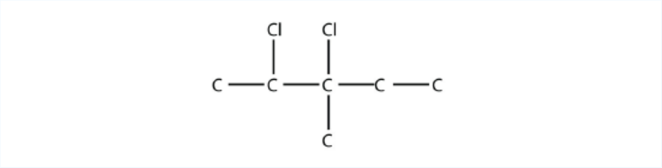
is 2-bromobutane, while this molecule



is 2,3-dichloropentane. If alkyl groups are present, the substituents are listed alphabetically. Numerical prefixes are ignored when determining the alphabetical ordering of substituent groups.

Example 3.4.1

Name this molecule.

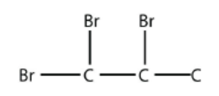


Solution

The longest carbon chain has five C atoms, so the molecule is a pentane. There are two chlorine substituents located on the second and third C atoms, with a one-carbon methyl group on the third C atom as well. The correct name for this molecule is 2,3-dichloro-3-methylpentane.

Exercise 3.4.1

Name this molecule.



Answer

1,1,2-tribromopropane

Another simple functional group is the covalently bonded OH group. This is the **alcohol functional group**. It is not the hydroxide ion; rather than being present as a negatively charged species, in organic chemistry it is a covalently bonded functional group.

Like alkyl halides, alcohols have a common naming system and a more formal system. The common system is similar to that of alkyl halides: name the alkyl group attached to the OH group, ending with the suffix -*yl*, and add the word *alcohol* as a second word. So CH_3OH is methyl alcohol; CH_3CH_2OH is ethyl alcohol, and $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$ is propyl alcohol.

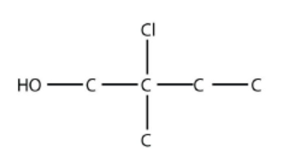
As with alkyl halides, though, this system is limited (although for smaller alcohols, it is very common in everyday usage). The formal system of naming uses the name of the hydrocarbon containing the OH group and having the correct number of C atoms, dropping the final -*e* of the name and appending the suffix -*ol*. Thus CH_3OH is methanol and CH_3CH_2OH is ethanol. For larger alcohol molecules, we use a number to indicate the position of the OH group on the longest carbon chain, similar to the number needed for alkenes and alkynes. Again, the carbon chain is numbered to give the OH group the lowest number, no matter how large the other numbers are. So $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$ is 1-propanol, while $CH_3CHOHCH_3$ is 2-propanol. (A common component in many medicine cabinets, 2-propanol is also known as isopropanol or isopropyl alcohol (Figure 3.4.1 - Isopropyl Alcohol).

Figure 3.4.1 Isopropyl Alcohol. What you find labeled **isopropyl alcohol** in a medicine cabinet is more formally called 2-propanol. *Source: Photo courtesy of Craig Spurrier, en.Wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Rubbing.*

Another acceptable way of naming an alcohol—especially a more complicated molecule—is to name the OH group as the hydroxy substituent and give it a numerical position like an alkyl group or a halogen atom. Thus, 2-propanol would be called 2-hydroxypropane by this convention.

✓ Example 3.4.2

Name this molecule as an alcohol and as a substituted alkane.

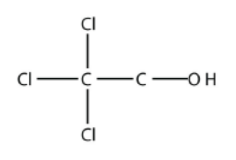


Solution

The longest carbon chain containing the OH group has four C atoms, so the parent hydrocarbon is butane. Because the OH group is on the first C atom, it is 1-butanol. There is a methyl group on the second C atom, as well as a Cl atom, so the formal name for this alcohol is 2-chloro-2-methyl-1-butanol. If naming the alcohol group as a substituent, it would be 2-chloro-1-hydroxy-2-methylbutane.

? Exercise 3.4.2

Name this molecule as an alcohol and as a substituted alkane.

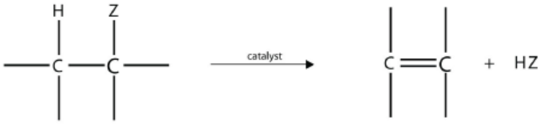


Answer

2,2,2-trichloroethanol; 2,2,2-trichloro-1-hydroxyethane

Most alkyl halides are insoluble in H_2O. Smaller alcohols, however, are very soluble in H_2O because these molecules can engage in hydrogen bonding with H_2O molecules. For larger molecules, however, the polar OH group is overwhelmed by the nonpolar alkyl part of the molecule. While methanol is soluble in H_2O in all proportions, only about 2.6 g of pentanol will dissolve in 100 g of H_2O. Larger alcohols have an even lower solubility in H_2O.

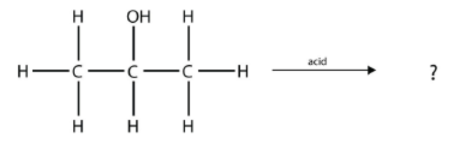
One reaction common to alcohols and alkyl halides is **elimination**, the removal of the functional group (either X or OH) and an H atom from an adjacent carbon. The general reaction can be written as follows:



where Z represents either the X or the OH group. The biggest difference between elimination in alkyl halides and elimination in alcohols is the identity of the catalyst: for alkyl halides, the catalyst is a strong base; for alcohols, the catalyst is a strong acid. For compounds in which there are H atoms on more than one adjacent carbon, a mixture of products results.

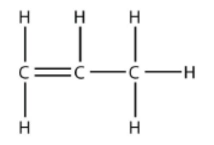
✓ Example 3.4.3

Predict the organic product(s) of this reaction.



Solution

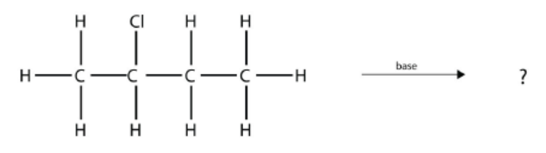
Under these conditions, an HOH (otherwise known as H_2O) molecule will be eliminated, and an alkene will be formed. It does not matter which adjacent carbon loses the H atom; in either case the product will be



which is propene.

? Exercise 3.4.3

Predict the organic product(s) of this reaction.



Answer

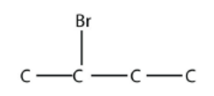
1-butene and 2-butene

Key Takeaways

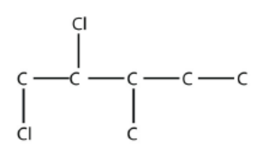
- Alkyl halides have a halogen atom as a functional group.
- Alcohols have an OH group as a functional group.
- Nomenclature rules allow us to name alkyl halides and alcohols.
- In an elimination reaction, a double bond is formed as an HX or an HOH molecule is removed.

? Exercise 3.4.4

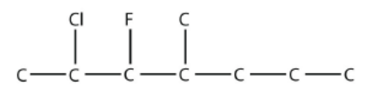
1. Define *functional group* and give two examples.
2. What is elimination? How does it differ for alkyl halides and alcohols?
3. Name this molecule.



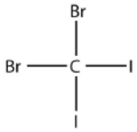
4. Name this molecule.



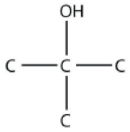
5. Name this molecule.



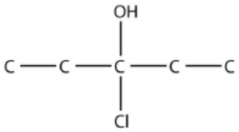
6. Name this molecule.



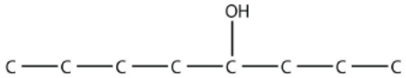
7. Name this molecule.



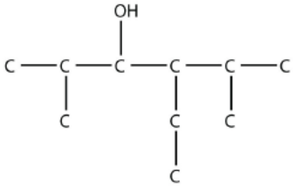
8. Name this molecule.



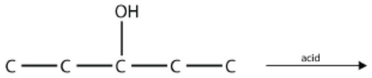
9. Name this molecule.



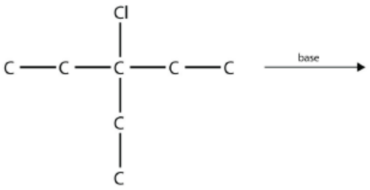
10. Name this molecule.



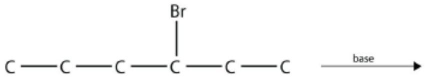
11. Predict the product(s) of this elimination reaction.



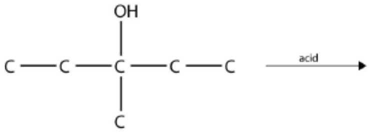
12. Predict the product(s) of this elimination reaction.



13. Predict the product(s) of this elimination reaction.



14. Predict the product(s) of this elimination reaction.



Nov 27, 2021, 11:15 AM

Answers

1. a group of atoms with a certain reactivity; halogen atoms and alcohol groups (answers will vary).
2.
3. 2-bromobutane
4.
5. 2-chloro-3-fluoro-4-methylheptane

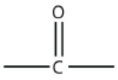
6.
7. 2-methyl-2-propanol
8.
9. 4-octanol
10.
11. 2-pentene
12.
13. 2-hexene and 3-hexene
1.

3.5: Other Oxygen-Containing Functional Groups

Learning Objective

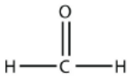
- Identify the aldehyde, ketone, acid, ester, and ether functional groups.

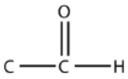
There are other functional groups that contain O atoms. Before we introduce them, we define the **carbonyl group**, which is formed when an O atom and a C atom are joined by a double bond:

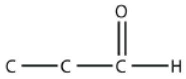


The other two bonds on the C atom are attached to other atoms. It is the identities of these other atoms that define what specific type of compound an organic molecule is.

If one bond of the carbonyl group is made to an H atom, then the molecule is classified as an **aldehyde** (If there are two H atoms, there is only 1 C atom). When naming aldehydes, the main chain of C atoms must include the carbon in the carbonyl group, which is numbered as position 1 in the carbon chain. The parent name of the hydrocarbon is used, but the suffix *-al* is appended. (Do not confuse *-al* with *-ol*, which is the suffix used for alcohols.) So we have

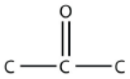

Methanal


Ethanal

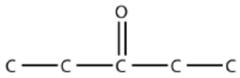

Propanal

Methanal has a common name with which you may be familiar: formaldehyde. The main thing to note about aldehydes is that the carbonyl group is at the *end* of a carbon chain.

A carbonyl group in the middle of a carbon chain implies that both remaining bonds of the carbonyl group are made to C atoms. This type of molecule is called a **ketone.** Despite the fact that aldehydes and ketones have the same carbonyl group, they have different chemical and physical properties and are properly grouped as two different types of compounds. The smallest ketone has three C atoms in it. When naming a ketone, we take the name of the parent hydrocarbon and change the suffix to *-one*:


Propanone

The common name for propanone is acetone. With larger ketones, we must use a number to indicate the position of the carbonyl group, much like a number is used with alkenes and alkynes:


3-Pentanone

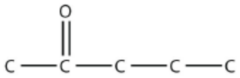
There is another way to name ketones: name the alkyl groups that are attached to the carbonyl group and add the word *ketone* to the name. So propanone can also be called dimethyl ketone, while 2-butanone is called methyl ethyl ketone.

Example 3.5.1

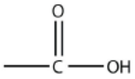
Draw the structure of 2-pentanone.

Solution

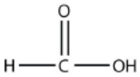
This molecule has five C atoms in a chain, with the carbonyl group on the second C atom. Its structure is as follows:



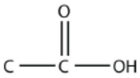
The combination of a carbonyl functional group and an OH group makes the **carboxyl group**.



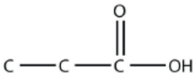
Molecules with a carboxyl group are called **carboxylic acids**. As with aldehydes, the functional group in carboxylic acids is at the end of a carbon chain. Also as with aldehydes, the C atom in the functional group is counted as one of the C atoms that defines the parent hydrocarbon name. To name carboxylic acids, the parent name of the hydrocarbon is used, but the suffix *-oic acid* is added:



Methanoic acid



Ethanoic acid

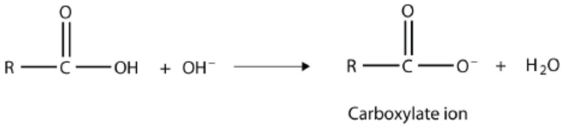


Propanoic acid

Methanoic acid and ethanoic acid are also called formic acid and acetic acid, respectively. Formic acid is the compound that makes certain ant bites sting, while acetic acid is the active substance in vinegar.

How acidic are carboxylic acids? It turns out that they are not very acidic. No carboxylic acid is on the list of strong acids (Table $3.5.1$). This means that all carboxylic acids are weak acids. A 1 M solution of formic acid is only about 1.3% dissociated into H^+ ions and formate ions, while a similar solution of acetic acid is ionized by about only 0.4%. Some carboxylic acids are stronger—for example, trichloroacetic acid is about 45% dissociated in aqueous solution. But no carboxylic acid approaches the 100% dissociation amount required by the definition of a strong acid.

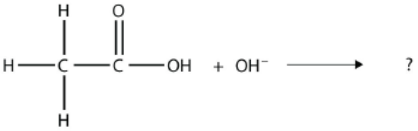
As their name suggests, however, carboxylic acids do act like acids in the presence of bases. The H atom in the carboxyl group comes off as the H^+ ion, leaving a **carboxylate anion**:



Carboxylate ions are named from the acid name: the *-oic acid* is replaced with *-oate* to name the ion.

✓ Example $3.5.2$:

Complete the chemical reaction. Can you name the carboxylate ion formed?



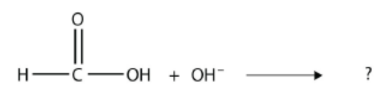
Solution

The OH^- ion removes the H atom that is part of the carboxyl group:

The carboxylate ion, which has the condensed structural formula $CH_3CO_2^-$, is the ethanoate ion, but it is commonly called the acetate ion.

Exercise 3.5.1

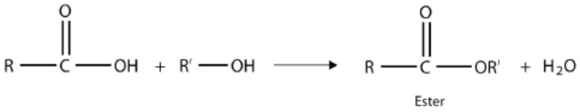
Complete the chemical reaction. Can you name the carboxylate ion formed?



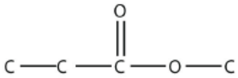
Answer

The anion is the methanoate ion, which is commonly called the formate ion.

One reaction to consider is that of a carboxylic acid and an alcohol. When combined under the proper conditions, a water molecule will be removed, and the remaining pieces will combine to form a new functional group—the **ester** functional group:



Note how the acid molecule contributes one alkyl side (represented by R), while the alcohol contributes the other side (represented by R′). Esters are named using the alkyl group name from the alcohol plus the carboxylate name from the acid. For example, the molecule



is called methyl propanoate.

✓ Chemistry is Everywhere: Esters, Fragrances, and Flavorings

Esters are very interesting compounds, in part because many have very pleasant odors and flavors. (Remember, never taste anything in the chemistry lab!) Many esters occur naturally and contribute to the odor of flowers and the taste of fruits. Other esters are synthesized industrially and are added to food products to improve their smell or taste; it is likely that if you eat a product whose ingredients include artificial flavorings, those flavorings are esters. Here are some esters and their uses, thanks to their odors, flavors, or both:

Table with four columns and seven rows. The first column on the left is labeled Ester and underneath in the rows has different esters. The second column is labeled Tastes/Smells Like and underneath in the rows has different tastes and smells. The third column is labeled Ester and underneath in the rows has different esters. The last and fourth column is labeled Tastes/Smells Like and underneath in the rows has different tastes and smells.

Ester	Tastes/Smells Like	Ester	Tastes/Smells Like
allyl hexanoate	pineapple	isobutyl formate	raspberry
benzyl acetate	pear	isobutyl acetate	pear
butyl butanoate	pineapple	methyl phenylacetate	honey
ethyl butanoate	banana	nonyl caprylate	orange
ethyl hexanoate	pineapple	pentyl acetate	apple
ethyl heptanoate	apricot	propyl ethanoate	pear
ethyl pentanoate	apple	propyl isobutyrate	rum

Finally, the **ether** functional group is an O atom that is bonded to two organic groups: R-O-R′

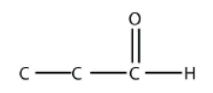
The two R groups may be the same or different. Naming ethers is like the alternate way of naming ketones. In this case, the R groups are named sequentially, and the word *ether* is appended. The molecule CH_3OCH_3 is dimethyl ether, while $CH_3OCH_2CH_3$ is methyl ethyl ether. Diethyl ether, another ether, was once used as an anesthetic, but its flammability and toxicity caused it to fall out of favor. Smaller ether molecules that are liquids at room temperature are common solvents for organic chemical reactions.

Key Takeaway

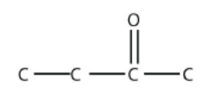
- Aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids, esters, and ethers have oxygen-containing functional groups.

Exercise 3.5.2

1. Name a similarity between the functional groups found in aldehydes and ketones. Can you name a difference between them?
2. Explain how a carboxylic acid is used to make an ester.
3. Name each molecule.

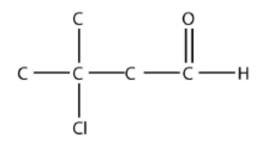
a. 

$$C-C-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-H$$

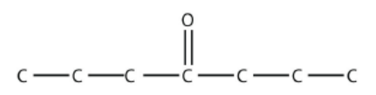
b. 

$$C-C-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-C$$

4. Name each molecule.

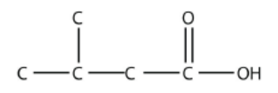
a. 

$$C-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle Cl}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\displaystyle C}{|}}{C}}-C-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-H$$

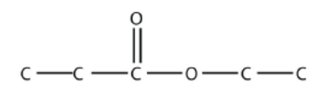
b. 

$$C-C-C-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-C-C-C$$

5. Name each molecule.

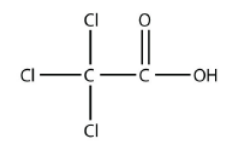
a. 

$$C-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle C}{|}}{C}-C-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-OH$$

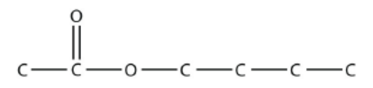
b. 

$$C-C-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-O-C-C$$

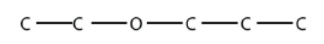
6. Name each molecule.

a. 

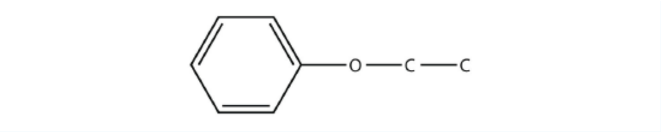
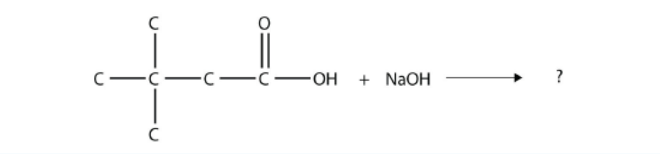
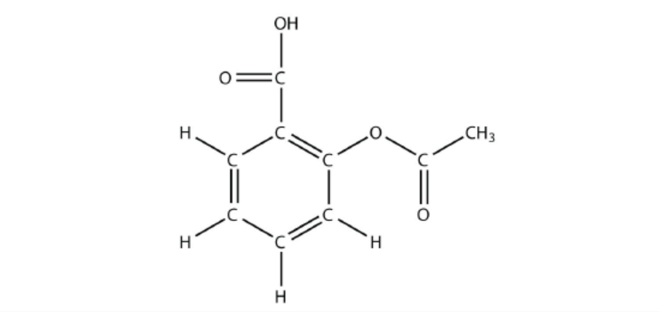
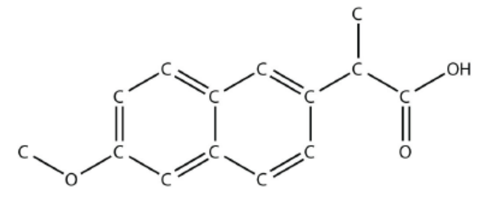
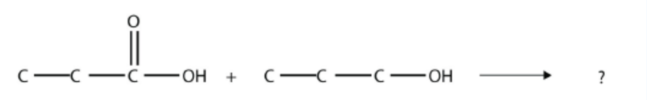
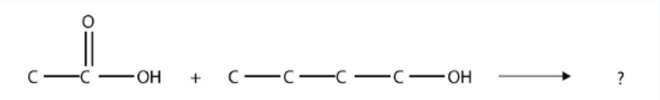
$$Cl-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle Cl}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\displaystyle Cl}{|}}{C}}-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-OH$$

b. 

$$C-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-O-C-C-C-C$$

7. Name the molecule. 

$$C-C-O-C-C-C$$

8. Name the molecule. 
9. Give an alternate but acceptable name to the molecule in Exercise 3b.
10. Give an alternate but acceptable name to the molecule in Exercise 4b.
11. Complete this chemical reaction. Propanoic acid reacts with <span class=KOH." style="width: 550px; height: 82px;" width="550px" height="82px" data-cke-saved-src="/@api/deki/files/96632/Ex_11.png" src="/@api/deki/files/96632/Ex_11.png" data-quail-id="209">
12. Complete this chemical reaction. 
13. The drug known as aspirin has this molecular structure:  Identify the functional group(s) in this molecule.
14. The drug known as naproxen sodium is the sodium salt of this molecule:  (The extra H atoms are omitted for clarity.) Identify the functional group(s) in this molecule.
15. Identify the ester made by reacting these molecules. 
16. Identify the ester made by reacting these molecules. 

Nov 27, 2021, 2:06 PM

Answers

1. They both have a carbonyl group, but an aldehyde has the carbonyl group at the end of a carbon chain, and a ketone has the carbonyl group in the middle.
2.
3. a. propanal
   b. 2-butanone
4.
5. a. 3-methylbutanoic acid
   b. ethyl propionate
6.

7. ethyl propyl ether
8.
9. ethyl methyl ketone
10.
11. H_2O + $KCH_3CH_2CO_2$
12.
13. acid, ester, and aromatic (benzene ring)
14.
15. propyl propionate

3.6: Other Functional Groups

Learning Objective

- Identify the amine, amide, and thiol functional groups.

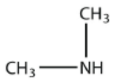
There are some common and important functional groups that contain elements other than oxygen. In this section, we will consider three of them.

Nitrogen-Containing Compounds

An **amine** is an organic derivative of ammonia (NH_3). In amines, one or more of the H atoms in NH_3 is substituted with an organic group. A *primary* amine has one H atom substituted with an R group:

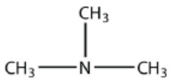
Methylamine

A *secondary* amine has two H atoms substituted with R groups:



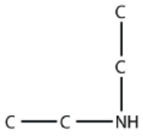
Dimethylamine

A *tertiary* amine has all three H atoms substituted with R groups:

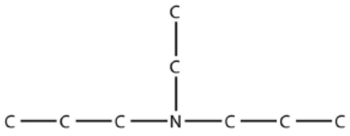


Trimethylamine

Naming simple amines is straightforward: name the R groups as substituents and then add the suffix -*amine*, using numerical suffixes on the substituent names as necessary. This amine



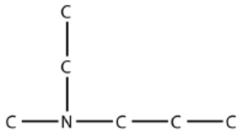
is diethylamine (the H atoms on the C atoms are omitted for clarity), while this amine



is ethyldipropylamine.

Example 3.6.1

Name this amine.

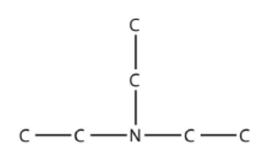


Solution

This amine has a methyl group, an ethyl group, and a propyl group. Listing the names in alphabetical order, this amine is ethylmethylpropylamine.

? Exercise 3.6.1

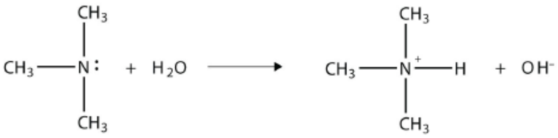
Name this amine.



Answer

triethylamine

As with NH_3, the N atom in amines can accept a proton onto the lone electron pair on the N atom. That is, amines act as Brønsted-Lowry bases (i.e., proton acceptors):



The amine becomes an ion, the organic counterpart of the ammonium (NH_4^+) ion.

All amines are weak bases. The weakness of amines is about the same as that of carboxylic acids. N-containing organic compounds are very common in nature, and they all act as weak bases. Some of these compounds have rather complicated structures. Figure 3.6.1 - Some Naturally Occurring N-Containing Compounds, shows some N-containing substances that you may recognize.

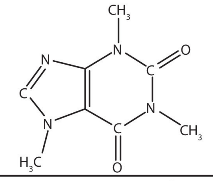
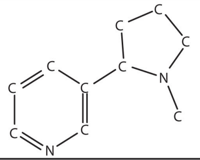
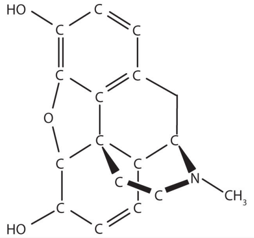
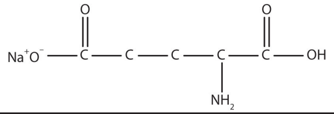
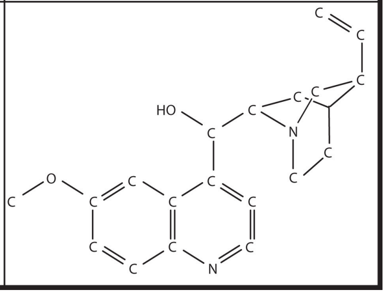
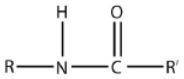
Compound	Structure Atoms not shown are assumed to be H atoms, which are omitted for clarity
Caffeine (stimulant found in teas and coffees)	
Nicotine (addictive compound found in tobacco)	
Morphine (painkiller)	
Monosodium glutamate (food additive and flavor enhancer)	 $Na^+O^- - \overset{O}{\overset{\Vert}{C}} - C - C - \underset{NH_2}{\underset{\vert}{C}} - \overset{O}{\overset{\Vert}{C}} - OH$
Quinine (antimalaria compound found in the bark of the cinchona tree)	

Figure 3.6.1 Some Naturally Occurring N-Containing Compounds.

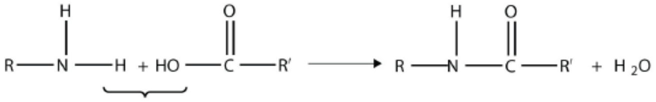
Nitrogen-containing compounds occur frequently in nature. Here are some that you might encounter in the course of your everyday life.

An **amide** functional group is a combination of an amine group and a carbonyl group:


$R - \overset{H}{\overset{\vert}{N}} - \overset{O}{\overset{\Vert}{C}} - R'$

Amide

Amides are actually formed by bringing together an amine-containing molecule and a carboxylic acid-containing molecule. A molecule of H_2O is lost, much like when an ester forms:


$R - \overset{H}{\overset{\vert}{N}} - \underbrace{H + HO} - \overset{O}{\overset{\Vert}{C}} - R' \longrightarrow R - \overset{H}{\overset{\vert}{N}} - \overset{O}{\overset{\Vert}{C}} - R' + H_2O$

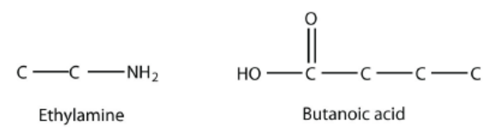
The bond between the N of the amine group and the C of the carbonyl group is called an **amide bond.** Amide bonds are particularly important in biological molecules called proteins, which are composed of strings of amino acids—molecules that have an amine group and a carboxylic acid group within them. The amine group on one amino acid reacts with the carboxylic acid group of another amino acid, making a chain held together by amide bonds. We will consider proteins later in this chapter.

Example 3.6.2

Draw the structure of the amide formed by the combination of ethylamine and butanoic acid.

Solution

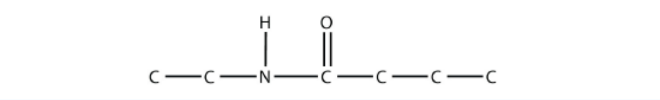
The structures of ethylamine and butanoic acid are as follows:



Ethylamine

Butanoic acid

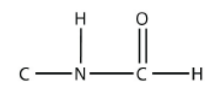
When they come together to make an amide, an H_2O molecule is lost, and the N of the amine group bonds to the C of the carboxyl group. The resulting molecule is as follows:



Exercise 3.6.2

Draw the structure of the amide formed by the combination of methylamine and formic acid.

Answer



Sulfur-Containing Compounds

Sulfur is below oxygen on the periodic table, and it occasionally shows some similar chemistry. One similarity is that an S atom can take the place of an O atom in an alcohol, to make a molecule that looks like this:

$$R\text{-}SH$$

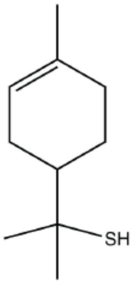
The sulfur analog of an alcohol is called a **thiol**. The formal way of naming a thiol is similar to that of alcohols, except that instead of using the *suffix-ol*, you use -*thiol* as the suffix. The following illustrates *thiol* nomenclature:

CH_3-SH	C_2H_5-SH	C_3H_7-SH
Methanethiol	Ethanethiol	Propanethiol

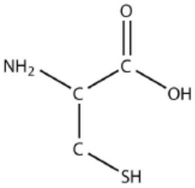
An older system uses the word *mercaptan* in naming simple thiols, much like the word *alcohol* is used with small alcohols. These thiols can also be named like this:

CH_3-SH	C_2H_5-SH	C_3H_7-SH
Methyl mercaptan	Ethyl mercaptan	Propyl mercaptan

Many thiols have strong, objectionable odors; indeed, the spray from skunks is composed of thiols and is detectable by the human nose at concentrations less than 10 ppb. Because natural gas is odorless, thiols are intentionally added to natural gas—at very low levels, of course—so that gas leaks can be more easily detected. Not all thiols have objectionable odors; this thiol is responsible for the odor of grapefruit:



One amino acid that is a thiol is cysteine:



Cysteine plays an important role in protein structure. If two cysteine amino acids in a protein chain approach each other, they can be oxidized, and a S–S bond (also known as a *disulfide bond*) is formed:

R–SH + HS–R → R–S–S–R

where the R group is the rest of the cysteine molecule. The disulfide bond is strong enough to fix the position of the two cysteine groups, thus imposing a structure on the protein. Hair is composed of about 5% cysteine, and the breaking and remaking of disulfide bonds between cysteine units is the primary mechanism behind straightening and curling hair (hair "perms").

✓ Food and Drink Application: Amino Acids, Essential and Otherwise

The text mentioned cysteine, an amino acid. Amino acids are the fundamental building blocks of proteins, a major biological component. Proteins are a necessary part of the diet; meat, eggs, and certain plant foods such as beans and soy are good sources of protein and amino acids.

All life on Earth—from the lowliest single-celled organism to humans to blue whales—relies on proteins for life, so all life on Earth is dependent on amino acids. The human body contains 20 different amino acids (curiously, other organisms may have a different number of amino acids). However, not all of them must be obtained from the diet. The body can synthesize 12 amino acids. The other 8 *must* be obtained from the diet. These 8 amino acids are called the *essential amino acids*. Daily requirements range from 4 mg per kilogram of body weight for tryptophan to 40 mg per kilogram of body weight for leucine. Infants and children need a greater mass per kg of body weight to support their growing bodies; also, the number of amino acids that are considered essential for infants and children is greater than for adults due to the greater protein synthesis associated with growth.

Because of the existence of essential amino acids, a diet that is properly balanced in protein is necessary. Rice and beans, a very popular food dish in Latin cuisines, actually provides all of the essential amino acids in one dish; without one component, the dish would be nutritionally incomplete. Corn (maize) is the most-grown grain crop in the world, but an over-reliance on it as a primary food source deprives people of lysine and tryptophan, which are two essential amino acids. (Indeed, it is now widely accepted that the disappearance of certain native American groups was largely due to the overuse of corn as the staple food.) People on restricted diets, whether out of necessity or by choice (e.g., vegetarians), may be missing the proper amount of an essential amino acid. It is important to vary the diet when possible to ensure ingestion of a wide range of protein sources.

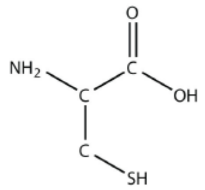
Key Takeaway

- Other functional groups include amine, amide, and thiol functional groups.

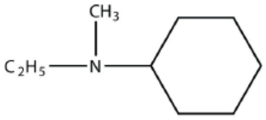
Exercise 3.6.3

1. What are the structure and name of the smallest amine?
2. What are the structure and name of the smallest thiol?
3. Identify each compound as a primary, secondary, or tertiary amine.

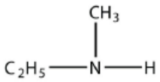
a.



b.

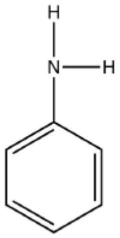


c.

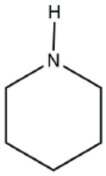


4. Identify each compound as a primary, secondary, or tertiary amine.

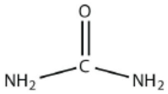
a.



b.

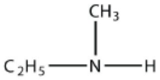


c.

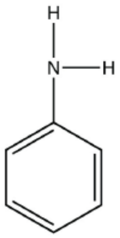


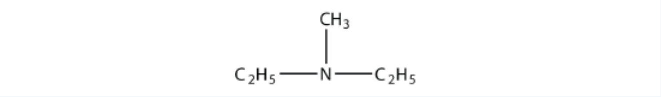
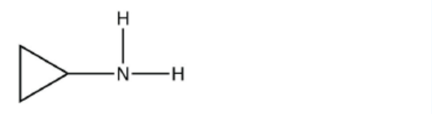
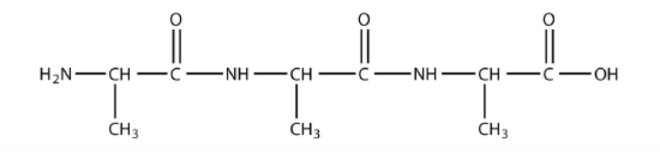
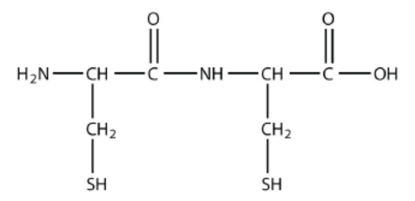
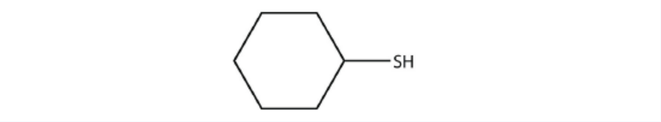
5. Write the chemical reaction between each amine in Exercise 3 and HCl.
6. Write the chemical reaction between each amine in Exercise 4 and HNO3.
7. Name each amine.

a.



b.



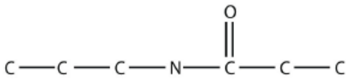
8. Name each amine.
   a. 
   $C_2H_5-N(CH_3)-C_2H_5$
   b. 
9. A *peptide* is a short chain of amino acids connected by amide bonds. How many amide bonds are present in this peptide?
   
   $H_2N-CH(CH_3)-C(=O)-NH-CH(CH_3)-C(=O)-NH-CH(CH_3)-C(=O)-OH$
10. How many amide bonds are present in this peptide? (See Exercise 9 for the definition of a peptide.)
   
   $H_2N-CH(CH_2SH)-C(=O)-NH-CH(CH_2SH)-C(=O)-OH$
11. Draw the backbone structure of the amide formed by reacting propylamine with propanoic acid.
12. Draw the backbone structure of the amide formed by reacting hexylamine with ethanoic acid.
13. Name each thiol using the *-thiol* suffix.
   a. 
   b. C_4H_9–SH
14. Name each thiol in Exercise 13 with the mercaptan label.
15. One component of skunk spray is 3-methyl-1-butanethiol. Draw its structure. (The 1 indicates the position of the S atom.)
16. An S–S bond can be fairly easily broken into proteins, yielding two lone cysteine units in a protein chain. Is this process an oxidation or a reduction? Explain your answer.

Nov 27, 2021, 10:50 AM

Answers

1. CH_3NH_2; methylamine
2.
3. a. primary
   b. tertiary
   c. secondary
4.
5. a. $C_3H_3CO_2HSHNH_2 + HCl \rightarrow C_3H_3CO_2HSHNH_3Cl$
   b. $(C_6H_{11})(C_2H_5)(CH_3)N + HCl \rightarrow (C_6H_{11})(C_2H_5)(CH_3)NHCl$
   c. $(C_2H_5)(CH_3)NH + HCl \rightarrow (C_2H_5)(CH_3)NH_2Cl$
6.
7. a. ethylmethylamine
   b. phenylamine
8.
9. two

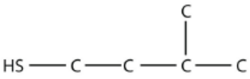
10.

11. 

12.

13. a. cyclohexanethiol
    b. butanethiol

14.

15. 

This page titled 3.6: Other Functional Groups is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Anonymous via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

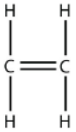
- **16.6: Other Functional Groups** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

3.7: Polymers

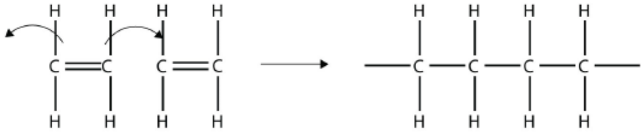
Learning Objectives

- Define the terms *monomer* and *polymer*.
- Draw the structure of a polymer from its monomer.

Among other applications, organic chemistry has had a huge impact on the development of modern materials called polymers. Many objects in daily life are composed of polymers; curiously, so are several important biological materials. Consider a molecule with a double bond, such as ethylene:

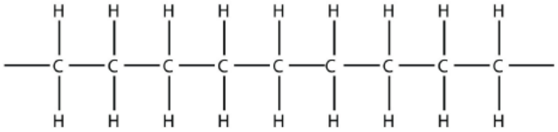


Imagine the bond between the carbons opening up and attacking another ethylene molecule:



The double bond between the two carbons is depicted with electron pushing arrows attacking another ethylene.

Now imagine further that the second ethylene molecule's double bond opens up and attacks a third ethylene molecule, which also opens up its double bond and attacks a fourth ethylene molecule, and so forth. The end result is a long, virtually endless molecule:



This long, almost nonstop molecule is called a **polymer** (from the Greek meaning "many parts"). The original part, ethylene, is called the **monomer** (meaning "one part"). The process of making a polymer is called **polymerization**. A polymer is an example of a *macromolecule*, the name given to a large molecule.

Simple polymers are named after their monomers. The ethylene polymer is formally called poly(ethylene), although in common use, the names are used without parentheses: polyethylene. Because adding one monomer to another forms this polymer, polyethylene is an example of a type of polymer called *addition polymers*. Figure 3.7.1 - Some Monomers and Their Addition Polymers, lists some addition polymers and their monomers. One of them, poly(ethylene oxide), results not from the opening of a double bond but the opening of a ring in the monomer; the concept of bonding with other monomers, however, is the same.

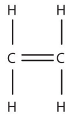
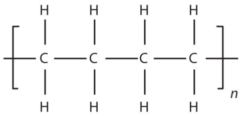
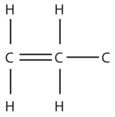
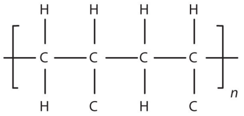
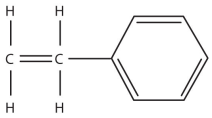
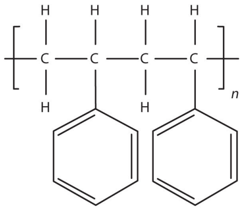
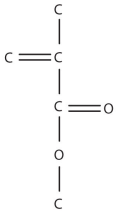
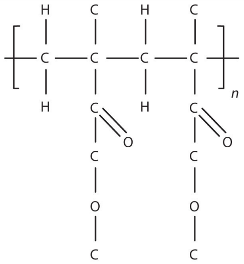
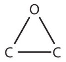
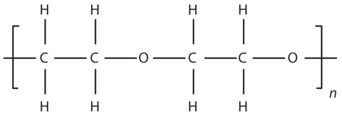
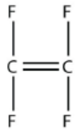
Monomer	Monomer Name	Polymer	Polymer Name
	ethylene		poly(ethylene)
	propylene		poly(propylene)
	styrene		poly(styrene)
	methyl methacrylate		poly(methyl methacrylate)
	ethylene oxide		poly(ethylene oxide)

Figure 3.7.1: Some Monomers and Their Addition Polymers

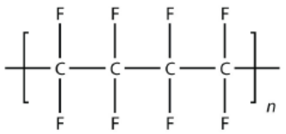
✓ Example 3.7.1

Draw the polymer that results from the polymerization of tetrafluoroethylene.



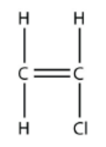
Solution

In the case of this monomer, the double bond opens up and joins to other monomers, just as with ethylene. The polymer that is made has this structure:

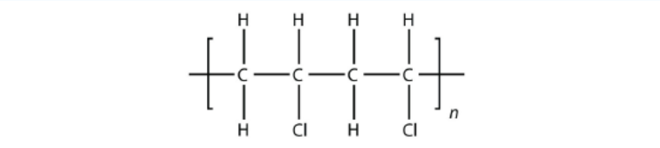


? Exercise 3.7.1

Draw the polymer that results from the polymerization of vinyl chloride.



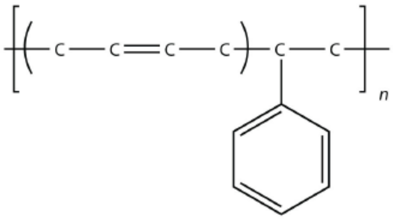
Answer



Another type of polymer is the *condensation polymer*, which is a polymer made when two different monomers react together and release some other small molecule as a product. We have already seen an example of this, in the formation of an amide bond:

Here, H_2O is released when the ends of the molecules react to form a polymer.

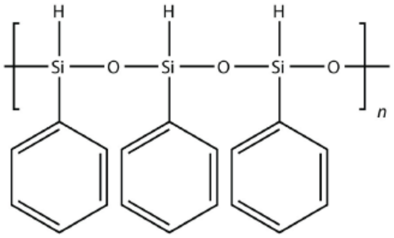
Related to condensation polymers are the *copolymers*, polymers made from more than one type of monomer. For example, ethylene and propylene can be combined into a polymer that is a mixture of the two monomers. A common form of synthetic rubber called styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) is made from two monomers: styrene and butadiene:



The physical and chemical properties of polymers vary widely, based on their monomers, structures, and additives. Among the other properties that can be modified based on these factors include: solubility in H_2O and other solvents, melting point, flammability, color, hardness, transparency, film thickness, wet-ability, surface friction, mold-ability, particle size...the list goes on.

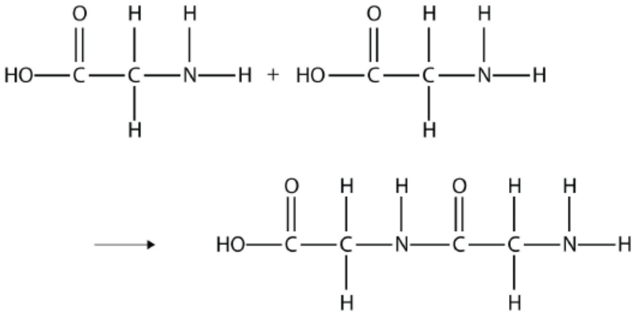
The uses of polymers are almost too numerous to consider. Anything that you might describe as "plastic" is likely a polymer. Polymers are used to make everything from toothbrushes to computer cases to automobile parts. Many epoxy-based adhesives are condensation polymers that adhere strongly to other surfaces. Polyurethane paints and coatings are polymers, as are the polyester fabrics used to make clothing. Nylon, Dacron, and Mylar are polymers (in fact, both Dacron and Mylar are forms of polyethylene terephthalate [PET]). The product known as Saran Wrap was originally constructed from Saran, a name for poly(vinylidene chloride), which was relatively impervious to oxygen and could be used as a barrier to help keep food fresh. (It has since been replaced with polyethylene, which is not as impervious to atmospheric oxygen.) Poly(vinyl chloride) is the third-most produced polymer [after poly(ethylene) and poly(propylene)] and is used to make everything from plastic tubing to automobile engine parts, water pipes to toys, flooring to waterbeds and pools.

All the polymers we have considered so far are based on a backbone of (largely) carbon. There is another class of polymers based on a backbone of Si and O atoms; these polymers are called **silicones**. The Si atoms have organic groups attached to them, so these polymers are still organic. One example of a silicone is as follows:



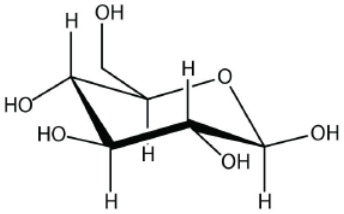
Silicones are used to make oils and lubricants; they are used as sealants for glass objects (such as aquariums) and films for waterproofing objects. Solid silicones are heat resistant and rubbery and are used to make cookware and electrical insulation.

Some very important biological materials are polymers. Of the three major food groups, polymers are represented in two: proteins and carbohydrates. Proteins are polymers of amino acids, which are monomers that have an amine functional group and a carboxylic acid functional group. These two groups react to make a condensation polymer, forming an amide bond:

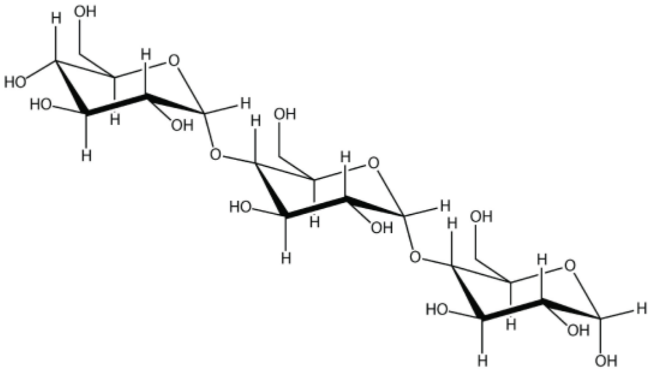


Proteins are formed when hundreds or even thousands of amino acids form amide bonds to make polymers. Proteins play a crucial role in living organisms.

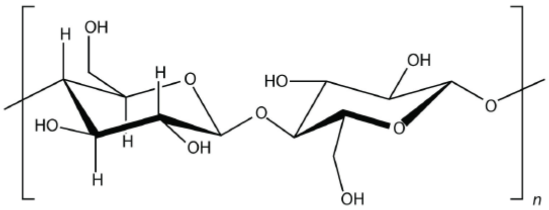
A *carbohydrate* is a compound that has the general formula $C_n(H_2O)_n$. Many carbohydrates are relatively small molecules, such as glucose:



Linking hundreds of glucose molecules together makes a relatively common material known as *starch*:



Starch is an important source of energy in the human diet. Note how individual glucose units are joined together. They can also be joined together in another way, like this:



This polymer is known as *cellulose*. Cellulose is a major component in the cell walls of plants. Curiously, despite the similarity in the building blocks, some animals (such as humans) cannot digest cellulose; those animals that can digest cellulose typically rely on symbiotic bacteria in the digestive tract for the actual digestion. Animals do not have the proper enzymes to break apart the glucose units in cellulose, so it passes through the digestive tract and is considered *dietary fiber*.

DNA

Deoxyribonucleic acid (*DNA*) and *ribonucleic acid* (*RNA*) are also polymers, composed of long, three-part chains consisting of phosphate groups, sugars with 5 C atoms (ribose or deoxyribose), and N-containing rings referred to as bases. Each combination of the three parts is called a nucleotide; DNA and RNA are essentially polymers of nucleotides that have rather complicated, but intriguing structures (Figure 3.7.2). DNA is the fundamental material in chromosomes and is directly responsible for heredity, while RNA is an essential substance in protein synthesis.

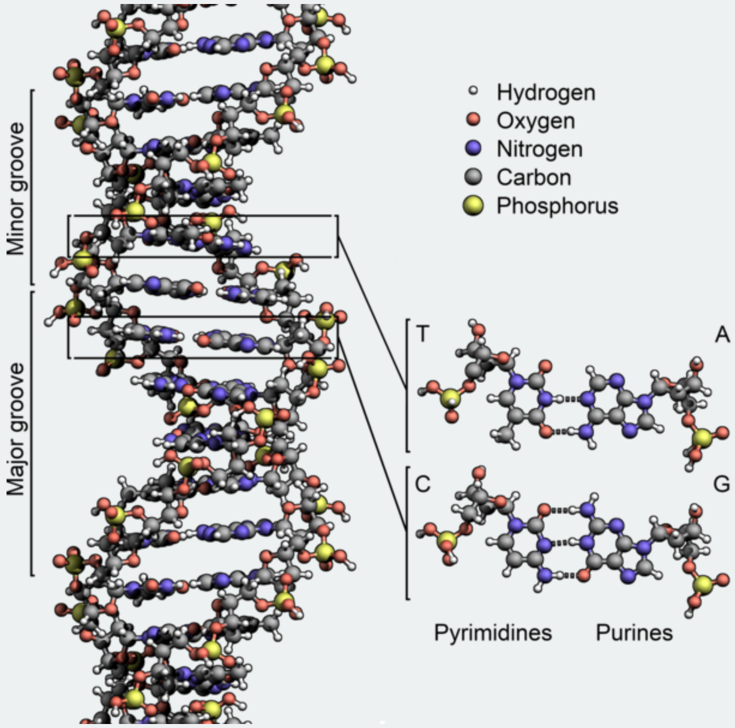


Figure 3.7.2: The DNA in our cells is a polymer of nucleotides, each of which is composed of a phosphate group, a sugar, and a nitrogen-containing base. (CC BY-SA 3.0 Unported; Zephyris via Wikipedia)

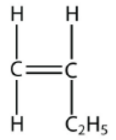
Key Takeaways

- Polymers are long molecules composed of chains of units called monomers.
- Several important biological polymers include proteins, starch, cellulose, and DNA.

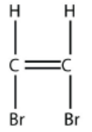
Exercise 3.7.2

1. Explain the relationship between a monomer and a polymer.
2. Must a monomer have a double bond to make a polymer? Give an example to illustrate your answer.

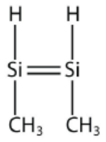
3. Draw the polymer made from this monomer.



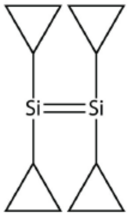
4. Draw the polymer made from this monomer.



5. What is the difference between an addition polymer and a condensation polymer?
6. What is the difference between a condensation polymer and a copolymer?
7. List three properties of polymers that vary widely with composition.
8. List three uses of polymers.
9. Draw the silicone made from this monomer.



10. Draw the silicone made from this monomer.

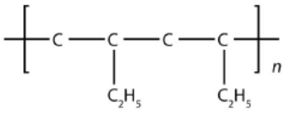


11. Explain how starch is a polymer.
12. What is the difference between starch and cellulose?
13. Explain how protein is a polymer.
14. What are the parts that compose DNA?

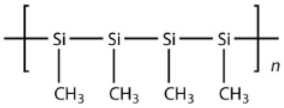
Nov 27, 2021, 10:23 AM

Answers

1. A polymer is many monomers bonded together.
2.



3.
4.
5. In an addition polymer, no small molecule is given off as a product; whereas in a condensation polymer, small parts of each monomer come off as a small molecule.
6.
7. solubility in H_2O and other solvents, melting point, flammability, color, hardness, transparency, film thickness, wetability, surface friction, moldability, and particle size (answers will vary)
8.



9.
10.
11. Starch is composed of many glucose monomer units.

12.
13. Proteins are polymers of amino acids, which act as the monomers.

3.8: Prelude to Chemical Reactions

The space shuttle—and any other rocket-based system—uses chemical reactions to propel itself into space and maneuver itself when it gets into orbit. The rockets that lift the orbiter are of two different types. The three main engines are powered by reacting liquid hydrogen with liquid oxygen to generate water. Then there are the two solid rocket boosters, which use a solid fuel mixture that contains mainly ammonium perchlorate and powdered aluminum. The chemical reaction between these substances produces aluminum oxide, water, nitrogen gas, and hydrogen chloride. Although the solid rocket boosters each have a significantly lower mass than the liquid oxygen and liquid hydrogen tanks, they provide over 80% of the lift needed to put the shuttle into orbit—all because of chemical reactions.

Figure 3.8.1 The Space Shuttle. (Public Domain; NASA).

3.9: The Chemical Equation

Learning Objectives

- Define *chemical equation*.
- Identify the parts of a chemical equation.

A chemical reaction expresses a chemical change. For example, one chemical property of hydrogen is that it will react with oxygen to make water. We can write that as follows:

$$\text{hydrogen reacts with oxygen to make water}$$

We can represent this chemical change more succinctly as:

$$\text{hydrogen} + \text{oxygen} \rightarrow \text{water}$$

where the + sign means that the two substances interact chemically with each other and the → symbol implies that a chemical reaction takes place. But substances can also be represented by chemical formulas. Remembering that hydrogen and oxygen both exist as diatomic molecules, we can rewrite our chemical change as:

$$H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow H_2O$$

This is an example of a chemical equation, which is a concise way of representing a **chemical reaction**. The initial substances are called **reactants** and the final substances are called **products**.

Unfortunately, it is also an *incomplete* chemical equation. The law of conservation of matter says that matter cannot be created or destroyed. In chemical equations, the number of atoms of each element in the reactants must be the same as the number of atoms of each element in the products. If we count the number of hydrogen atoms in the reactants and products, we find two hydrogen atoms. But if we count the number of oxygen atoms in the reactants and products, we find that there are two oxygen atoms in the reactants, but only one oxygen atom in the products.

What can we do? Can we change the subscripts in the formula for water so that it has two oxygen atoms in it? No—you *cannot* change the formulas of individual substances, because the chemical formula for a given substance is characteristic of that substance. What you *can* do, however, is to change the number of molecules that react or are produced. We do this one element at a time, going from one side of the reaction to the other, changing the number of molecules of a substance until all elements have the same number of atoms on each side.

To accommodate the two oxygen atoms as reactants, let us assume that we have two water molecules as products:

$$H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2\,H_2O$$

The 2 in front of the formula for water is called a **coefficient**. Now there are the same number of oxygen atoms in the reactants as there are in the product. But in satisfying the need for the same number of oxygen atoms on both sides of the reaction, we have also changed the number of hydrogen atoms on the product side, so the number of hydrogen atoms is no longer equal. No problem, simply go back to the reactant side of the equation, and add a coefficient in front of the H_2. The coefficient that works is 2:

$$2\,H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2\,H_2O$$

There are now four hydrogen atoms in the reactants and also four atoms of hydrogen in the product. There are two oxygen atoms in the reactants and two atoms of oxygen in the product. The law of conservation of matter has been satisfied. When the reactants and products of a chemical equation have the same number of atoms of all elements present, we say that an equation is **balanced**. All proper chemical equations are balanced. If a substance does not have a coefficient written in front of it, it is assumed to be 1. Also, the convention is to use all whole numbers when balancing chemical equations. This sometimes makes us do a bit more "back and forth" work when balancing a chemical equation.

✓ Example 3.9.1

Write and balance the chemical equation for each given chemical reaction.

1. Hydrogen and chlorine react to make HCl
2. Ethane, C_2H_6, reacts with oxygen to make carbon dioxide and water.

Solution

1. Let us start by simply writing a chemical equation in terms of the formulas of the substances, remembering that both elemental hydrogen and chlorine are diatomic:

$$\mathrm{H_2 + Cl_2 \rightarrow HCl}$$

There are two hydrogen atoms and two chlorine atoms in the reactants and one of each atom in the product. We can fix this by including the coefficient 2 on the product side:

$$\mathrm{H_2 + Cl_2 \rightarrow 2\,HCl}$$

Now there are two hydrogen atoms and two chlorine atoms on both sides of the chemical equation, so it is balanced.

2. Start by writing the chemical equation in terms of the substances involved:

$$\mathrm{C_2H_6 + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O}$$

We have two carbon atoms on the left, so we need two carbon dioxide molecules on the product side, so that each side has two carbon atoms; that element is balanced. We have six hydrogen atoms in the reactants, so we need six hydrogen atoms in the products. We can get this by having three water molecules:

$$\mathrm{C_2H_6 + O_2 \rightarrow 2\,CO_2 + 3\,H_2O}$$

Now we have seven oxygen atoms in the products (four from the CO2 and three from the H2O). This means we need seven oxygen atoms in the reactants. However, because oxygen is a diatomic molecule, we can only get an even number of oxygen atoms at a time. We can achieve this by multiplying the other coefficients by 2:

$$\mathrm{2\,C_2H_6 + O_2 \rightarrow 4\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O}$$

By multiplying everything else by 2, we do not unbalance the other elements, and we now get an even number of oxygen atoms in the product—14. We can get 14 oxygen atoms on the reactant side by having 7 oxygen molecules:

$$\mathrm{2\,C_2H_6 + 7\,O_2 \rightarrow 4\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O}$$

As a check, recount everything to determine that each side has the same number of atoms of each element. This chemical equation is now balanced.

? Exercise 3.9.1

Write and balance the chemical equation that represents nitrogen and hydrogen reacting to produce ammonia, NH3.

Answer

\ce{N2 + 3H2 → 2NH3 \nonumber \nonumber

Many chemical equations also include phase labels for the substances: (s) for solid, (ℓ) for liquid, (g) for gas, and (aq) for aqueous (i.e., dissolved in water). Special conditions, such as temperature, may also be listed above the arrow. For example,

$$\mathrm{2\,NaHCO_3(s)} \overset{200^\circ C}{\rightarrow} \mathrm{Na_2CO_3(s) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(l)}$$

Key Takeaways

- A chemical equation is a concise description of a chemical reaction.
- Proper chemical equations are balanced.

3.10: Types of Chemical Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Recognize chemical reactions as single-replacement reactions and double-replacement reactions.
- Use the periodic table, an activity series, or solubility rules to predict whether single-replacement reactions or double-replacement reactions will occur.

Up until now, we have presented chemical reactions as a topic, but we have not discussed how the products of a chemical reaction can be predicted. Here we will begin our study of certain types of chemical reactions that allow us to predict what the products of the reaction will be.

A **single-replacement reaction** is a chemical reaction in which one element is substituted for another element in a compound, generating a new element and a new compound as products. Presented below:

$$2\,\mathrm{HCl(aq)} + \mathrm{Zn(s)} \rightarrow \mathrm{ZnCl_2(aq)} + \mathrm{H_2(g)}$$

is an example of a single-replacement reaction. The hydrogen atoms in HCl are replaced by Zn atoms, and in the process a new element—hydrogen—is formed. Another example of a single-replacement reaction is

$$2\,\mathrm{NaCl(aq)} + \mathrm{F_2(g)} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NaF(s)} + \mathrm{Cl_2(g)}$$

Here the negatively charged ion changes from chloride to fluoride. A typical characteristic of a single-replacement reaction is that there is one element as a reactant and another element as a product.

Not all proposed single-replacement reactions will occur between two given reactants. This is most easily demonstrated with fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine. Collectively, these elements are called the *halogens* and are in the next-to-last column on the periodic table (Figure $3.10.1$). The elements on top of the column will replace the elements below them on the periodic table, but not the other way around. Thus, the reaction represented by

$$\mathrm{CaI_2(s)} + \mathrm{Cl_2(g)} \rightarrow \mathrm{CaCl_2(s)} + \mathrm{I_2(s)}$$

will occur; but the reaction

$$\mathrm{CaF_2(s)} + \mathrm{Br_2(\ell)} \rightarrow \mathrm{CaBr_2(s)} + \mathrm{F_2(g)}$$

will not, because bromine is below fluorine on the periodic table. This is just one of many ways the periodic table helps us to understand chemistry.

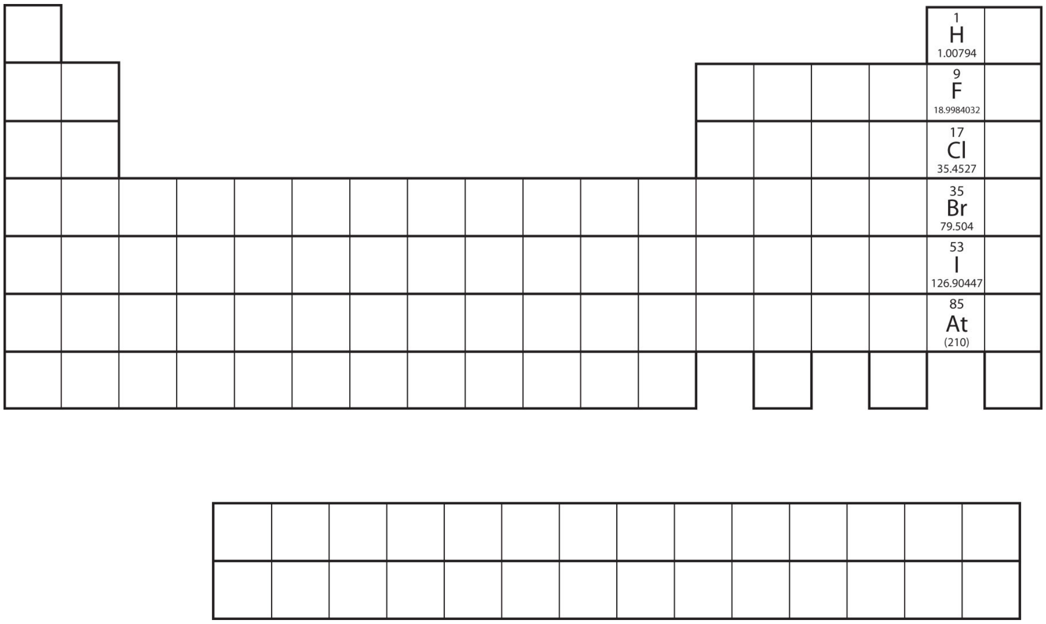


Figure 3.10.1: Halogens on the Periodic Table. The halogens are the elements in the next-to-last column on the periodic table.

✓ Example 3.10.1

Will a single-replacement reaction occur? If so, identify the products.

a. $MgCl_2 + I_2 \rightarrow$?
b. $CaBr_2 + F_2 \rightarrow$?

Solution

a. Because iodine is below chlorine on the periodic table, a single-replacement reaction will not occur.
b. Because fluorine is above bromine on the periodic table, a single-replacement reaction will occur, and the products of the reaction will be CaF_2 and Br_2.

? Exercise 3.10.1

Will a single-replacement reaction occur? If so, identify the products.

$$\mathrm{FeI_2 + Cl_2} \rightarrow$$

Answer

Yes; $FeCl_2$ and I_2

Chemical reactivity trends are easy to predict when replacing anions in simple ionic compounds—simply use their relative positions on the periodic table. However, when replacing the cations, the trends are not as straightforward. This is partly because there are so many elements that can form cations; an element in one column on the periodic table may replace another element nearby, or it may not. A list called the **activity series** does the same thing the periodic table does for halogens: it lists the elements that will replace elements below them in single-replacement reactions. A simple activity series is shown below.

? Activity Series for Cation Replacement in Single-Replacement Reactions

- Li
- K
- Ba
- Sr
- Ca
- Na
- Mg
- Al
- Mn
- Zn
- Cr
- Fe
- Ni
- Sn
- Pb
- H_2
- Cu
- Hg
- Ag
- Pd
- Pt
- Au

Using the activity series is similar to using the positions of the halogens on the periodic table. An element on top will replace an element below it in compounds undergoing a single-replacement reaction. Elements will not replace elements above them in compounds.

✓ Example 3.10.2

Use the activity series to predict the products, if any, of each equation.

1. $FeCl_2$ + Zn → ?
2. HNO_3 + Au → ?

Solution

1. Because zinc is above iron in the activity series, it will replace iron in the compound. The products of this single-replacement reaction are $ZnCl_2$ and Fe.
2. Gold is below hydrogen in the activity series. As such, it will not replace hydrogen in a compound with the nitrate ion. No reaction is predicted.

? Exercise 3.10.2

Use the activity series to predict the products, if any, of this equation.

$$\mathrm{AlPO_4 + Mg \rightarrow}$$

Answer

$Mg_3(PO_4)_2$ and Al

A **double-replacement reaction** occurs when parts of two ionic compounds are exchanged, making two new compounds. A characteristic of a double-replacement equation is that there are two compounds as reactants and two different compounds as products. An example is

$$\mathrm{CuCl_2(aq) + 2\,AgNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2\,AgCl(s)}$$

There are two equivalent ways of considering a double-replacement equation: either the cations are swapped, or the anions are swapped. (You cannot swap both; you would end up with the same substances you started with.) Either perspective should allow you to predict the proper products, as long as you pair a cation with an anion, and not a cation with a cation or an anion with an anion.

✓ Example 3.10.3

Predict the products of this double-replacement equation:

$$\mathrm{BaCl_2 + Na_2SO_4 \rightarrow}$$

Solution

Thinking about the reaction as either switching the cations or switching the anions, we would expect the products to be $BaSO_4$ and NaCl.

? Exercise 3.10.3

Predict the products of this double-replacement equation:

$$\mathrm{KBr + AgNO_3 \rightarrow}$$

Answer

KNO_3 and AgBr

Predicting whether a double-replacement reaction occurs is somewhat more difficult than predicting a single-replacement reaction. However, there is one type of double-replacement reaction that we can predict: the precipitation reaction. A **precipitation reaction** occurs when two ionic compounds are dissolved in water and form a new ionic compound that does not dissolve; this new compound falls out of solution as a solid **precipitate.** The formation of a solid precipitate is the driving force that makes the reaction proceed.

To judge whether double-replacement reactions will occur, we need to know what kinds of ionic compounds form precipitates. For this, we use **solubility rules**, which are general statements that predict which ionic compounds dissolve (are soluble) and which do not (are not soluble, or insoluble). Table 3.10.1 lists some general solubility rules. We need to consider each ionic compound (both the reactants and the possible products) in light of the solubility rules. If a compound is soluble, we use the (aq) label with it, indicating that it dissolves. If a compound is not soluble, we use the (s) label with it and assume that it will precipitate out of solution. If everything is soluble, then no reaction will be expected.

Table 3.10.1: Some Useful Solubility Rules (soluble)

These compounds generally dissolve in water (are soluble):	Exceptions:
All compounds of Li^+, Na^+, K^+, Rb^+, Cs^+, and NH_4^+	None
All compounds of NO_3^- and $C_2H_3O_2^-$	None
Compounds of Cl^-, Br^-, I^-	Ag^+, Hg_2^{2+}, Pb^{2+}
Compounds of SO_4^{2}	Hg_2^{2+}, Pb^{2+}, Sr^{2+}, Ba^{2+}

Table 3.10.2: Some Useful Solubility Rules (insoluble)

These compounds generally do not dissolve in water (are insoluble):	Exceptions:
Compounds of CO_3^{2-} and PO_4^{3-}	Compounds of Li^+, Na^+, K^+, Rb^+, Cs^+, and NH_4^+
Compounds of OH^-	Compounds of Li^+, Na^+, K^+, Rb^+, Cs^+, NH_4^+, Sr^{2+}, and Ba^{2+}

For example, consider the possible double-replacement reaction between Na_2SO_4 and $SrCl_2$. The solubility rules say that all ionic sodium compounds are soluble and all ionic chloride compounds are soluble, except for Ag^+, Hg_2^{2+}, and Pb^{2+}, which are not being considered here. Therefore, Na_2SO_4 and $SrCl_2$ are both soluble. The possible double-replacement reaction products are NaCl and $SrSO_4$. Are these soluble? NaCl is (by the same rule we just quoted), but what about $SrSO_4$? Compounds of the sulfate ion are generally soluble, but Sr^{2+} is an exception: we expect it to be insoluble—a precipitate. Therefore, we expect a reaction to occur, and the balanced chemical equation would be:

$$\mathrm{Na_2SO_4(aq) + SrCl_2(aq) \rightarrow 2\,NaCl(aq) + SrSO_4(s)}$$

You would expect to see a visual change corresponding to $SrSO_4$ precipitating out of solution (Figure 3.10.2).

Figure 3.10.2: Double-Replacement Reactions. Some double-replacement reactions are obvious because you can see a solid precipitate coming out of solution. Source: Photo courtesy of Choij, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Copper_solution.jpg(opens in new window).

✓ Example 3.10.4

Will a double-replacement reaction occur? If so, identify the products.

1. $Ca(NO_3)_2$ + KBr → ?
2. NaOH + $FeCl_2$ → ?

Solution

1. According to the solubility rules, both $Ca(NO_3)_2$ and KBr are soluble. Now we consider what the double-replacement products would be by switching the cations (or the anions)—namely, $CaBr_2$ and KNO_3. However, the solubility rules predict that these two substances would also be soluble, so no precipitate would form. Thus, we predict no reaction in this case.
2. According to the solubility rules, both NaOH and $FeCl_2$ are expected to be soluble. If we assume that a double-replacement reaction may occur, we need to consider the possible products, which would be NaCl and $Fe(OH)_2$. NaCl is soluble, but, according to the solubility rules, $Fe(OH)_2$ is not. Therefore, a reaction would occur, and $Fe(OH)_2(s)$ would precipitate out of solution. The balanced chemical equation is

$$2\,\mathrm{NaOH(aq)} + \mathrm{FeCl_2(aq)} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NaCl(aq)} + \mathrm{Fe(OH)_2(s)}$$

? Exercise 3.10.4

$$\mathrm{Sr(NO_3)_2} + \mathrm{KCl} \rightarrow$$

Answer

No reaction; all possible products are soluble.

Key Takeaways

- A single-replacement reaction replaces one element for another in a compound.
- The periodic table or an activity series can help predict whether single-replacement reactions occur.
- A double-replacement reaction exchanges the cations (or the anions) of two ionic compounds.
- A precipitation reaction is a double-replacement reaction in which one product is a solid precipitate.
- Solubility rules are used to predict whether some double-replacement reactions will occur.

3.11: Ionic Equations - A Closer Look

Learning Objectives

- Write ionic equations for chemical reactions between ionic compounds.
- Write net ionic equations for chemical reactions between ionic compounds.

For single-replacement and double-replacement reactions, many of the reactions included ionic compounds—compounds between metals and nonmetals, or compounds that contained recognizable polyatomic ions. Now, we take a closer look at reactions that include ionic compounds.

One important aspect about ionic compounds that differs from molecular compounds has to do with dissolution in a liquid, such as water. When molecular compounds, such as sugar, dissolve in water, the individual molecules drift apart from each other. When ionic compounds dissolve, *the ions physically separate from each other*. We can use a chemical equation to represent this process—for example, with NaCl:

$$\mathrm{NaCl(s)} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{Na^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)}$$

When NaCl dissolves in water, the ions separate and go their own way in solution; the ions are now written with their respective charges, and the (aq) phase label emphasizes that they are dissolved (Figure $3.11.1$). This process is called **dissociation;** we say that the ions *dissociate*.

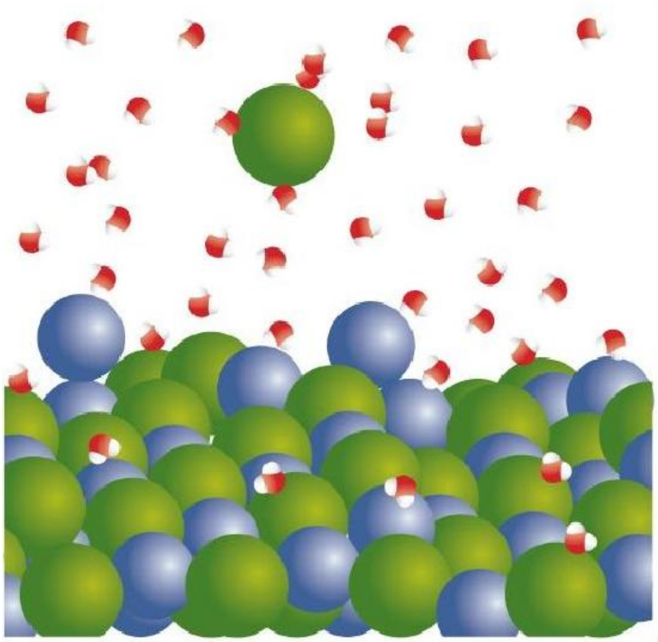


Figure $3.11.1$ Ionic Solutions. When an ionic compound dissociates in water, water molecules surround each ion and separate it from the rest of the solid. Each ion goes its own way in solution.

All ionic compounds that dissolve behave this way. This behavior was first suggested by the Swedish chemist Svante August Arrhenius [1859–1927] as part of his PhD dissertation in 1884. Interestingly, his PhD examination team had a hard time believing that ionic compounds would behave like this, so they gave Arrhenius a barely passing grade. Later, this work was cited when Arrhenius was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry. Keep in mind that when the ions separate, *all* the ions separate. Thus, when $CaCl_2$ dissolves, the one Ca^{2+} ion and the two Cl^- ions separate from one another:

$$CaCl_2(s) \overset{H_2O}{\rightarrow} Ca^{2+}(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

$$CaCl_2(s) \overset{H_2O}{\rightarrow} Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq)$$

That is, the two chloride ions go off on their own. They do not remain as Cl_2 (that would be elemental chlorine; these are chloride ions), and they do not stick together to make Cl_2^- or Cl_2^{2-}. They become dissociated ions in their own right. Polyatomic ions also retain their overall identity when they are dissolved.

✓ Example 3.11.1

Write the chemical equation that represents the dissociation of each ionic compound.

1. KBr
2. Na_2SO_4

Solution

1. $KBr(s) \rightarrow K^+(aq) + Br^-(aq)$
2. Not only do the two sodium ions go their own way, but the sulfate ion stays together as the sulfate ion. The dissolving equation is $Na_2SO_4(s) \rightarrow 2Na^+(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq)$

? Exercise 3.11.1

Write the chemical equation that represents the dissociation of $(NH_4)_2S$.

Answer

$(NH_4)_2S(s) \rightarrow 2NH_4^+(aq) + S^{2-}(aq)$

When chemicals in solution react, the proper way of writing the chemical formulas of the dissolved ionic compounds is in terms of the dissociated ions, not the complete ionic formula. A **complete ionic equation** is a chemical equation in which the dissolved ionic compounds are written as separated ions. Solubility rules are very useful in determining which ionic compounds are dissolved and which are not. For example, when $NaCl(aq)$ reacts with $AgNO_3(aq)$ in a double-replacement reaction to precipitate $AgCl(s)$ and form $NaNO_3(aq)$, the complete ionic equation includes NaCl, $AgNO_3$, and $NaNO_3$ written as separate ions:

$$\mathrm{Na^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + Ag^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s) + Na^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq)}$$

This is more representative of what is occurring in the solution.

✓ Example 3.11.1

Write the complete ionic equation for each chemical reaction.

1. $KBr(aq) + AgC_2H_3O_2(aq) \rightarrow KC_2H_3O_2(aq) + AgBr(s)$
2. $MgSO_4(aq) + Ba(NO_3)_2(aq) \rightarrow Mg(NO_3)_2(aq) + BaSO_4(s)$

Solution

For any ionic compound that is aqueous, we will write the compound as separated ions.

1. The complete ionic equation is $K^+(aq) + Br^-(aq) + Ag^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) \rightarrow K^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) + AgBr(s)$
2. The complete ionic equation is $Mg^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) + Ba^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq) + BaSO_4(s)$

? Exercise 3.11.1

Write the complete ionic equation for

$$\mathrm{CaCl_2(aq) + Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) \rightarrow Ca(NO_3)_2(aq) + PbCl_2(s)}$$

Answer

$Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq) + Pb^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq) \rightarrow Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq) + PbCl_2(s)$

You may notice that in a complete ionic equation, some ions do not change their chemical form; they stay exactly the same on the reactant and product sides of the equation. For example, in

$Na^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + Ag^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s) + Na^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq)$

the $Ag^+(aq)$ and $Cl^-(aq)$ ions become $AgCl(s)$, but the $Na^+(aq)$ ions and the $NO_3^-(aq)$ ions stay as $Na^+(aq)$ ions and $NO_3^-(aq)$ ions. These two ions are examples of spectator ions—ions that do nothing in the overall course of a chemical reaction. They are present, but they do not participate in the overall chemistry. It is common to cancel spectator ions (something also done with algebraic quantities) on the opposite sides of a chemical equation:

$$Na^+\cancel{(aq)} + Cl^-(aq) + Ag^+(aq) + \cancel{NO_3^-}(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s) + \cancel{Na}^+(aq) + \cancel{NO}_3^-(aq)$$

What remains when the spectator ions are removed is called the **net ionic equation**, which represents the actual chemical change occurring between the ionic compounds:

$Cl^-(aq) + Ag^+(aq) \rightarrow AgCl(s)$

It is important to reiterate that the spectator ions are still present in solution, but they do not experience any net chemical change, so they are not written in a net ionic equation.

✓ Example 3.11.1

Write the net ionic equation for each chemical reaction.

1. $K^+(aq) + Br^-(aq) + Ag^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) \rightarrow K^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) + AgBr(s)$
2. $Mg^{2+}(aq) + SO_4^{2-}(aq) + Ba^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq) \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq) + BaSO_4(s)$

Solution

1. In the first equation, the $K^+(aq)$ and $C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$ ions are spectator ions, so they are canceled:

$$K^+\cancel{(aq)} + Br^-(aq) + Ag^+(aq) + C_2H_3\cancel{O_2^-(aq)} \rightarrow K^+(aq) + C_2H_3\cancel{O_2^-(aq)} + AgBr(s)$$

The net ionic equation is

$Br^-(aq) + Ag^+(aq) \rightarrow AgBr(s)$

2. In the second equation, the $Mg^{2+}(aq)$ and $NO_3^-(aq)$ ions are spectator ions, so they are canceled:

$$Mg^{2+}\cancel{(aq)} + SO_4^{2-}(aq) + Ba^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-\cancel{(aq)} \rightarrow Mg^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-\cancel{(aq)} + BaSo_4(s)$$

The net ionic equation is

$SO_4^{2-}(aq) + Ba^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4(s)$

? Exercise 3.11.1

Write the net ionic equation for

$CaCl_2(aq) + Pb(NO_3)_2(aq) \rightarrow Ca(NO_3)_2(aq) + PbCl_2(s)$

Answer

$Pb^{2+}(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq) \rightarrow PbCl_2(s)$

✓ Chemistry is Everywhere: Soluble and Insoluble Ionic Compounds

The concept of solubility versus insolubility in ionic compounds is a matter of degree. Some ionic compounds are very soluble, some are only moderately soluble, and some are soluble so little that they are considered insoluble. For most ionic compounds, there is also a limit to the amount of compound that can be dissolved in a sample of water. For example, you can dissolve a maximum of 36.0 g of NaCl in 100 g of water at room temperature, but you can dissolve only 0.00019 g of AgCl in 100 g of water. We consider NaCl soluble but AgCl insoluble.

One place where solubility is important is in the tank-type water heater found in many homes in the United States. Domestic water frequently contains small amounts of dissolved ionic compounds, including calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$). However,

$CaCO_3$ has the relatively unusual property of being less soluble in hot water than in cold water. So as the water heater operates by heating water, $CaCO_3$ can precipitate if there is enough of it in the water. This precipitate, called *limescale*, can also contain magnesium compounds, hydrogen carbonate compounds, and phosphate compounds. The problem is that too much limescale can impede the function of a water heater, requiring more energy to heat water to a specific temperature or even blocking water pipes into or out of the water heater, causing dysfunction.

Figure 3.11.2 Tank water heater © Thinkstock. Most homes in the United States have a tank-type water heater like this one.

Another place where solubility versus insolubility is an issue is the Grand Canyon. We usually think of rock as insoluble. But it is actually ever so slightly soluble. This means that over a period of about two billion years, the Colorado River carved rock from the surface by slowly dissolving it, eventually generating a spectacular series of gorges and canyons. And all because of solubility!

Figure 3.11.3: The Grand Canyon was formed by water running through rock for billions of years, very slowly dissolving it. Note the Colorado River is still present in the lower part of the photo. (Sonaal Bangera via unsplash)

Key Takeaways

- Ionic compounds that dissolve separate into individual ions.
- Complete ionic equations show dissolved ionic solids as separated ions.
- Net ionic equations show only the ions and other substances that change in a chemical reaction.

3.12: Composition, Decomposition, and Combustion Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Recognize composition, decomposition, and combustion reactions.
- Predict the products of a combustion reaction.

Three classifications of chemical reactions will be reviewed in this section. Predicting the products in some of them may be difficult, but the reactions are still easy to recognize.

A **composition reaction** (sometimes also called a *combination reaction* or a *synthesis reaction*) produces a single substance from multiple reactants. A single substance as a product is the key characteristic of the composition reaction. There may be a coefficient other than one for the substance, but if the reaction has only a single substance as a product, it can be called a composition reaction. In the reaction

$$2\,H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell)$$

water is produced from hydrogen and oxygen. Although there are two molecules of water being produced, there is only one substance—water—as a product. So this is a composition reaction.

A **decomposition reaction** starts from a single substance and produces more than one substance; that is, it decomposes. The key characteristics of a decomposition reaction are: one substance as a reactant and more than one substance as the products. For example, in the decomposition of sodium hydrogen carbonate (also known as sodium bicarbonate):

$$2\,NaHCO_3(s) \rightarrow Na_2CO_3(s) + CO_2(g) + H_2O(\ell)$$

sodium carbonate, carbon dioxide, and water are produced from the single substance sodium hydrogen carbonate.

Composition and decomposition reactions are difficult to predict; however, they should be easy to recognize.

Example 3.12.1: Identifying Reactions

Identify each equation as a composition reaction, a decomposition reaction, or neither.

a. $Fe_2O_3 + 3\,SO_3 \rightarrow Fe_2(SO_4)_3$
b. $NaCl + AgNO_3 \rightarrow AgCl + NaNO_3$
c. $(NH_4)_2Cr_2O_7 \rightarrow Cr_2O_3 + 4\,H_2O + N_2$

Solution

a. In this equation, two substances combine to make a single substance. This is a composition reaction.
b. Two different substances react to make two new substances. This does not fit the definition of either a composition reaction or a decomposition reaction, so it is neither. In fact, you may recognize this as a double-replacement reaction.
c. A single substance reacts to make multiple substances. This is a decomposition reaction.

Exercise 3.12.1

Identify the equation as a composition reaction, a decomposition reaction, or neither.

$$C_3H_8 \rightarrow C_3H_4 + 2\,H_2$$

Answer

decomposition

A **combustion reaction** occurs when a reactant combines with oxygen, many times from the atmosphere, to produce oxides of all other elements as products; any nitrogen in the reactant is converted to elemental nitrogen, N_2. Many reactants, called *fuels*, contain mostly carbon and hydrogen atoms, reacting with oxygen to produce CO_2 and H_2O. For example, the balanced chemical equation for the combustion of methane, CH_4, is as follows:

$$CH_4 + 2\,O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + 2\,H_2O$$

Kerosene can be approximated with the formula $C_{12}H_{26}$, and its combustion equation is:

$$2\,C_{12}H_{26} + 37\,O_2 \rightarrow 24\,CO{-}2\ + 26\,H_2O$$

Sometimes fuels contain oxygen atoms, which must be counted when balancing the chemical equation. One common fuel is ethanol, C_2H_5OH, whose combustion equation is:

$$C_2H_5OH + 3\,O_2 \rightarrow 2\,CO_2 + 3\,H_2O$$

If nitrogen is present in the original fuel, it is converted to N_2, not to a nitrogen-oxygen compound. Thus, for the combustion of the fuel dinitroethylene, whose formula is $C_2H_2N_2O_4$, we have:

$$2\,C_2H_2N_2O_4 + O_2 \rightarrow 4\,CO_2 + 2\,H_2O + 2\,N_2$$

Example 3.12.2: Combustion Reactions

Complete and balance each combustion equation.

1. the combustion of propane (C_3H_8)
2. the combustion of ammonia (NH_3)

Solution

1. The products of the reaction are CO2 and H2O, so our unbalanced equation is

   $$C_3H_8 + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$$

   Balancing (and you may have to go back and forth a few times to balance this), we get

   $$C_3H_8 + 5\,O_2 \rightarrow 3\,CO_2 + 4\,H_2O$$

2. The nitrogen atoms in ammonia will react to make N2, while the hydrogen atoms will react with O2 to make H2O:

   $$NH_3 + O_2 \rightarrow N_2 + H_2O$$

   To balance this equation without fractions (which is the convention), we get

   $$4\,NH_3 + 3\,O_2 \rightarrow 2\,N_2 + 6\,H_2O$$

Exercise 3.12.2

Complete and balance the combustion equation for cyclopropanol (\ce{C3H6O}\)).

Answer

$$C_3H_6O + 4\,O_2 \rightarrow 3\,CO_2 + 3\,H_2O$$

Figure 3.12.1 A 20 lb (9.1 kg) steel propane cylinder.

Key Takeaways

- A composition reaction produces a single substance from multiple reactants.
- A decomposition reaction produces multiple products from a single reactant.
- Combustion reactions are the combination of some compound with oxygen to make oxides of the other elements as products (although nitrogen atoms react to make N_2).

3.13: Neutralization Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Identify an acid and a base.
- Identify a neutralization reaction and predict its products.

In Chapter 3, we defined an acid as an ionic compound that contains H^+ as the cation. This is slightly incorrect, but until additional concepts were developed, a better definition needed to wait. Now we can redefine an acid: an **acid** is any compound that increases the amount of hydrogen ion (H^+) in an aqueous solution. The chemical opposite of an acid is a base. The equivalent definition of a base is that a **base** is a compound that increases the amount of hydroxide ion (OH^-) in an aqueous solution. These original definitions were proposed by Arrhenius (the same person who proposed ion dissociation) in 1884, so they are referred to as the **Arrhenius definition** of an acid and a base, respectively.

You may recognize that, based on the description of a hydrogen atom, an H^+ ion is a hydrogen atom that has lost its lone electron; that is, H^+ is simply a proton. Do we really have bare protons moving about in aqueous solution? No. What is more likely is that the H^+ ion has attached itself to one (or more) water molecule(s). To represent this chemically, we define the **hydronium ion** as H_3O^+, which represents an additional proton attached to a water molecule. We use the hydronium ion as the more logical way that a hydrogen ion appears in an aqueous solution, although in many chemical reactions H^+ and H_3O^+ are treated equivalently.

The reaction of an acid and a base is called a **neutralization reaction**. Although acids and bases have their own unique chemistries, the acid and base cancel each other's chemistry to produce a rather innocuous substance—water. In fact, the general reaction between an acid and a base is:

$$\text{acid} + \text{base} \rightarrow \text{water} + \text{salt}$$

where the term **salt** is generally used to define any ionic compound (soluble or insoluble) that is formed from a reaction between an acid and a base. (In chemistry, the word *salt* refers to more than just table salt.) For example, the balanced chemical equation for the reaction between HCl(aq) and KOH(aq) is

$$\mathrm{HCl(aq) + KOH(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + KCl(aq)}$$

where the salt is KCl. By counting the number of atoms of each element, we find that only one water molecule is formed as a product. However, in the reaction between HCl(aq) and $Mg(OH)_2(aq)$, additional molecules of HCl and H_2O are required to balance the chemical equation:

$$\mathrm{2\,HCl(aq) + Mg(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell) + MgCl_2(aq)}$$

Here, the salt is $MgCl_2$. (This is one of several reactions that take place when a type of antacid—a base—is used to treat stomach acid.)

✓ Example 3.13.1

Write the neutralization reactions between each acid and base.

a. $HNO_3(aq)$ and $Ba(OH)_2(aq)$
b. $H_3PO_4(aq)$ and $Ca(OH)_2(aq)$

Solution

First, we will write the chemical equation with the formulas of the reactants and the expected products; then we will balance the equation.

a. The expected products are water and barium nitrate, so the initial chemical reaction is

$$\mathrm{HNO_3(aq) + Ba(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + Ba(NO_3)_2(aq)}$$

To balance the equation, we need to realize that there will be two H_2O molecules, so two HNO_3 molecules are required:

$$\mathrm{2\,HNO_3(aq) + Ba(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell) + Ba(NO_3)_2(aq)}$$

This chemical equation is now balanced.

b. The expected products are water and calcium phosphate, so the initial chemical equation is

$$H_3PO_4(aq) + Ca(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + Ca_3(PO_4)_2(s)$$

According to the solubility rules, $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$ is insoluble, so it has an (s) phase label. To balance this equation, we need two phosphate ions and three calcium ions. We end up with six water molecules to balance the equation:

$$2\,H_3PO_4(aq) + 3\,Ca(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow 6\,H_2O(\ell) + Ca_3(PO_4)_2(s)$$

This chemical equation is now balanced.

? Exercise 3.13.1

Write the neutralization reaction between H_2SO_4(aq) and $Sr(OH)_2$(aq).

Answer

$$H_2SO_4(aq) + Sr(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell) + SrSO_4(aq)$$

Neutralization reactions are one type of chemical reaction that proceeds even if one reactant is not in the aqueous phase. For example, the chemical reaction between HCl(aq) and $Fe(OH)_3$(s) still proceeds according to the equation:

$$3\,HCl(aq) + Fe(OH)_3(s) \rightarrow 3\,H_2O(\ell) + FeCl_3(aq)$$

even though $Fe(OH)_3$ is not soluble. When one realizes that $Fe(OH)_3$(s) is a component of rust, this explains why some cleaning solutions for rust stains contain acids—the neutralization reaction produces products that are soluble and wash away. (Washing with acids like HCl is one way to remove rust and rust stains, but HCl must be used with caution!)

Complete and net ionic reactions for neutralization reactions will depend on whether the reactants and products are soluble, even if the acid and base react. For example, in the reaction of HCl(aq) and NaOH(aq),

$$HCl(aq) + NaOH(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + NaCl(aq)$$

the complete ionic reaction is

$$H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + Na^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + Na^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

The Na^+(aq) and Cl^-(aq) ions are spectator ions, so we can remove them to have

$$H^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell)$$

as the net ionic equation. If we wanted to write this in terms of the hydronium ion, H_3O^+(aq), we would write it as

$$H_3O^+(aq) + OH^-(aq) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell)$$

With the exception of the introduction of an extra water molecule, these two net ionic equations are equivalent.

However, for the reaction between HCl(aq) and $Cr(OH)_2$(s), because chromium(II) hydroxide is insoluble, we cannot separate it into ions for the complete ionic equation:

$$2\,H^+(aq) + 2\,Cl^-(aq) + Cr(OH)_2(s) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell) + Cr^{2+}(aq) + 2\,Cl^-(aq)$$

The chloride ions are the only spectator ions here, so the net ionic equation is

$$2\,H^+(aq) + Cr(OH)_2(s) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell) + Cr^{2+}(aq)$$

✓ Example 3.13.2

Oxalic acid, $H_2C_2O_4$(s), and $Ca(OH)_2$(s) react very slowly. What is the net ionic equation between these two substances if the salt formed is insoluble? (The anion in oxalic acid is the oxalate ion, $C_2O_4^{2-}$.)

Solution

The products of the neutralization reaction will be water and calcium oxalate:

$H_2C_2O_4(s) + Ca(OH)_2(s) \rightarrow 2H_2O(\ell) + CaC_2O_4(s)$

Because nothing is dissolved, there are no substances to separate into ions, so the net ionic equation is the equation of the three solids and one liquid.

❓ Exercise 3.13.2

What is the net ionic equation between $HNO_3(aq)$ and $Ti(OH)_4(s)$?

Answer

$4H^+(aq) + Ti(OH)_4(s) \rightarrow 4H_2O(\ell) + Ti^{4+}(aq)$

Key Takeaways

- The Arrhenius definition of an acid is a substance that increases the amount of H^+ in an aqueous solution.
- The Arrhenius definition of a base is a substance that increases the amount of OH^- in an aqueous solution.
- Neutralization is the reaction of an acid and a base, which forms water and a salt.
- Net ionic equations for neutralization reactions may include solid acids, solid bases, solid salts, and water.

3.14: Oxidation-Reduction Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Define *oxidation* and *reduction*.
- Assign oxidation numbers to atoms in simple compounds.
- Recognize a reaction as an oxidation-reduction reaction.

Consider this chemical reaction:

$$\mathrm{Mg(s)+Cl_2(g)\rightarrow MgCl_2}$$

The reactants are two electrically neutral elements; they have the same number of electrons as protons. The product, however, is ionic; it is composed of Mg^{2+} and Cl^{-} ions. Somehow, the individual Mg atoms lose two electrons to make the Mg^{2+} ion, while the Cl atoms gain an electron to become Cl^{-} ions. This reaction involves the *transfer of electrons* between atoms.

The process of losing and gaining electrons occurs simultaneously. However, mentally we can separate the two processes. **Oxidation** is defined as the loss of one or more electrons by an atom. **Reduction** is defined as the gain of one or more electrons by an atom. So oxidation and reduction always occur together; it is only mentally that we can separate them. Chemical reactions that involve the transfer of electrons are called **oxidation-reduction (or redox) reactions**.

Redox reactions require that we keep track of the electrons assigned to each atom in a chemical reaction. How do we do that? We use **oxidation numbers** to keep track of electrons in atoms. Oxidation numbers are assigned to atoms based on four rules. Oxidation numbers are not necessarily equal to the charge on the atom (although sometimes they can be); we must keep the concepts of charge and oxidation numbers separate.

Assigning Oxidation Numbers

The rules for assigning oxidation numbers to atoms are as follows:

1. Atoms in their elemental state are assigned an oxidation number of 0.
2. Atoms in monatomic (i.e., one-atom) ions are assigned an oxidation number equal to their charge. Oxidation numbers are usually written with the sign first, then the magnitude, to differentiate them from charges.
3. In compounds, fluorine is assigned a −1 oxidation number; oxygen is usually assigned a −2 oxidation number (except in peroxide compounds [where it is −1] and in binary compounds with fluorine [where it is positive]); and hydrogen is usually assigned a +1 oxidation number (except when it exists as the hydride ion [H^{-}], in which case rule 2 prevails).
4. In compounds, all other atoms are assigned an oxidation number so that the sum of the oxidation numbers on all the atoms in the species equals the charge on the species (which is zero if the species is neutral).

Here are some examples for practice. In H_2, both H atoms have an oxidation number of 0 by rule 1. In $MgCl_2$, magnesium has an oxidation number of +2, while chlorine has an oxidation number of −1 by rule 2. In H_2O, the H atoms each have an oxidation number of +1, while the O atom has an oxidation number of −2, even though hydrogen and oxygen do not exist as ions in this compound (rule 3). By contrast, by rule 3, each H atom in hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) has an oxidation number of +1, while each O atom has an oxidation number of −1. We can use rule 4 to determine oxidation numbers for the atoms in SO_2. Each O atom has an oxidation number of −2; for the sum of the oxidation numbers to equal the charge on the species (which is zero), the S atom is assigned an oxidation number of +4. Does this mean that the sulfur atom has a 4+ charge on it? No, it means only that the S atom is assigned a +4 oxidation number by our rules of apportioning electrons among the atoms in a compound.

Example 3.14.1

Assign oxidation numbers to the atoms in each substance.

a. $\mathrm{Cl_2}$
b. $\mathrm{GeO_2}$
c. $\mathrm{Ca(NO_3)_2}$

Solution

1. Cl_2 is the elemental form of chlorine. Rule 1 states each atom has an oxidation number of 0.
2. By rule 3, oxygen is normally assigned an oxidation number of −2. For the sum of the oxidation numbers to equal the charge on the species (zero), the Ge atom is assigned an oxidation number of +4.
3. $Ca(NO_3)_2$ can be separated into two parts: the Ca^{2+} ion and the NO_3^- ion. Considering these separately, the Ca^{2+} ion has an oxidation number of +2 by rule 2. Now consider the NO_3^- ion. Oxygen is assigned an oxidation number of −2, and there are three of them. According to rule 4, the sum of the oxidation numbers on all atoms must equal the charge on the species, so we have the simple algebraic equation x + 3(−2) = −1 where x is the oxidation number of the N atom and the −1 represents the charge on the species. Evaluating for x,

$$\begin{aligned} x + (-6) &= -1 \\ x &= +5 \end{aligned}$$

Thus the oxidation number on the N atom in the NO_3^- ion is +5.

Exercise 3.14.1: Phosphoric Acid

Assign oxidation numbers to the atoms in H3PO4.

Answer

H: +1; O: −2; P: +5

All redox reactions occur with a simultaneous change in the oxidation numbers of some atoms. At least two elements must change their oxidation numbers. When an oxidation number of an atom is increased in the course of a redox reaction, that atom is being *oxidized*. When an oxidation number of an atom is decreased in the course of a redox reaction, that atom is being *reduced*. Oxidation and reduction can also be defined in terms of increasing or decreasing oxidation numbers, respectively.

Example 3.14.2

Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox reaction.

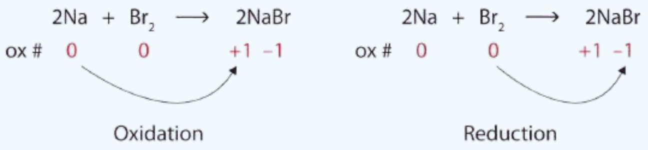
$$2\,Na + Br_2 \rightarrow 2\,NaBr$$

Solution

Both reactants are the elemental forms of their atoms, so the Na and Br atoms have oxidation numbers of 0. In the ionic product, the Na^+ ions have an oxidation number of +1, while the Br^- ions have an oxidation number of −1.

$$2\,\underset{0}{Na} + \underset{0}{Br_2} \rightarrow 2\,\underset{+1\ -1}{NaBr}$$

Sodium is increasing its oxidation number from 0 to +1, so it is being oxidized; bromine is decreasing its oxidation number from 0 to −1, so it is being reduced:



Because oxidation numbers are changing, this is a redox reaction. The total number of electrons being lost by sodium (two, one lost from each Na atom) is gained by bromine (two, one gained for each Br atom).

Exercise 3.14.2

Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox reaction.

$$C + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2$$

Answer

C is being oxidized from 0 to +4.

O is being reduced from 0 to −2.

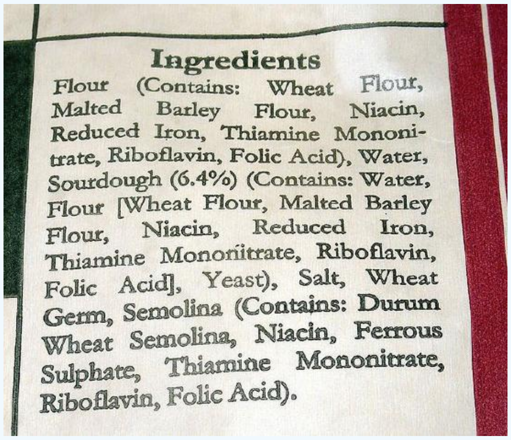
Oxidation reactions can become quite complex, as attested by the following redox reaction:

$$6\,H^+(aq) + 2\,\underset{+7}{Mn}O_4^-(aq) + 5\,H_2\underset{-1}{O_2}(l) \longrightarrow 2\,\underset{+2}{Mn}^{2+}(aq) + 5\,\underset{0}{O_2}(g) + 8\,H_2O(l)$$

To demonstrate that this is a redox reaction, the oxidation numbers of the species being oxidized and reduced are listed; can you determine what is being oxidized and what is being reduced? This is also an example of a net ionic reaction; spectator ions that do not change oxidation numbers are not displayed in the equation. Eventually, we will need to learn techniques for writing correct (i.e., balanced) redox reactions.

✓ Food and Drink Application: Fortifying Food with Iron

Iron is an essential mineral in our diet; iron-containing compounds like the heme protein in hemoglobin could not function without it. Most biological iron has the form of the Fe^{2+} ion; iron with other oxidation numbers is almost inconsequential in human biology (although the body does contain an enzyme to reduce Fe^{3+} to Fe^{2+}, so Fe^{3+} must have some biological significance, albeit minor). To ensure that we ingest enough iron, many foods are enriched with iron. Although Fe^{2+} compounds are the most logical substances to use, some foods use "reduced iron" as an ingredient (bread and breakfast cereals are the most well-known examples). Reduced iron is simply iron metal; iron is added as a fine metallic powder. The metallic iron is oxidized to Fe^{2+} in the digestive system and then absorbed by the body, but the question remains: Why are we ingesting metallic iron? Why not just use Fe^{2+} salts as an additive?



Ingredients

Flour (Contains: Wheat Flour, Malted Barley Flour, Niacin, Reduced Iron, Thiamine Mononitrate, Riboflavin, Folic Acid), Water, Sourdough (6.4%) (Contains: Water, Flour [Wheat Flour, Malted Barley Flour, Niacin, Reduced Iron, Thiamine Mononitrate, Riboflavin, Folic Acid], Yeast), Salt, Wheat Germ, Semolina (Contains: Durum Wheat Semolina, Niacin, Ferrous Sulphate, Thiamine Mononitrate, Riboflavin, Folic Acid).

Figure 3.14.1 Ingredients. Many prepared foods list reduced iron in their ingredients list.

Although it is difficult to establish conclusive reasons, a search of scientific and medical literature suggests a few reasons. One reason is that fine iron filings do not affect the taste of the product. The size of the iron powder (several dozen micrometers) is not noticeable when chewing iron-supplemented foods, and the tongue does not detect any changes in flavor that can be detected when using Fe^{2+} salts. Fe^{2+} compounds can affect other properties of foodstuffs during preparation and cooking, like dough pliability, yeast growth, and color. Finally, of the common iron substances that might be used, metallic iron is the least expensive. These factors appear to be among the reasons why metallic iron is the supplement of choice in some foods.

Key Takeaways

- Oxidation-reduction (redox) reactions involve the transfer of electrons from one atom to another.
- Oxidation numbers are used to keep track of electrons in atoms.
- There are rules for assigning oxidation numbers to atoms.
- Oxidation is an increase in oxidation number (loss of electrons); reduction is a decrease in oxidation number (gain of electrons).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Module 4

We have already established that quantities are important in science, especially in chemistry. It is important to make accurate measurements of a variety of quantities when performing experiments. However, it is also important to be able to relate one measured quantity to another, unmeasured quantity. In this chapter, we will consider how we manipulate quantities to relate them to each other.

4.1: Stoichiometry

Learning Objectives

- Define *stoichiometry*.
- Relate quantities in a balanced chemical reaction on a molecular basis.

Consider a classic recipe for pound cake: 1 pound of eggs, 1 pound of butter, 1 pound of flour, and 1 pound of sugar. (That's why it's called "pound cake.") If you have 4 pounds of butter, how many pounds of sugar, flour, and eggs do you need? You would need 4 pounds each of sugar, flour, and eggs.

Now suppose you have 1.00 g H_2. If the chemical reaction follows the balanced chemical equation

$$2\,H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell)$$

then what mass of oxygen do you need to make water?

Curiously, this chemical reaction question is very similar to the pound cake question. Both of them involve relating a quantity of one substance to a quantity of another substance or substances. The relating of one chemical substance to another using a balanced chemical reaction is called **stoichiometry**. Using stoichiometry is a fundamental skill in chemistry; it greatly broadens your ability to predict what will occur and, more importantly, how much is produced.

Let us consider a more complicated example. A recipe for pancakes calls for 2 cups (c) of pancake mix, 1 egg, and 1/2 c of milk. We can write this in the form of a chemical equation:

2 c mix + 1 egg + 1/2 c milk → 1 batch of pancakes

If you have 9 c of pancake mix, how many eggs and how much milk do you need? It might take a little bit of work, but eventually you will find you need 4½ eggs and 2¼ c milk.

How can we formalize this? We can make a conversion factor using our original recipe and use that conversion factor to convert from a quantity of one substance to a quantity of another substance. This is similar to the way we constructed a conversion factor between feet and yards in Chapter 2. Because one recipe's worth of pancakes requires 2 c of pancake mix, 1 egg, and 1/2 c of milk, we actually have the following mathematical relationships that relate these quantities:

2 c pancake mix ⇔ 1 egg ⇔ 1/2 c milk

where ⇔ is the mathematical symbol for "is equivalent to." This does not mean that 2 c of pancake mix equal 1 egg. However, *as far as this recipe is concerned*, these are the equivalent quantities needed for a single recipe of pancakes. So, any possible quantities of two or more ingredients must have the same numerical ratio as the ratios in the equivalence.

We can deal with these equivalences in the same way we deal with equalities in unit conversions: we can make conversion factors that essentially equal 1. For example, to determine how many eggs we need for 9 c of pancake mix, we construct the conversion factor:

$$\frac{1\,egg}{2\,c\,pancake\,mix}$$

This conversion factor is, in a strange way, equivalent to 1 because the recipe relates the two quantities. Starting with our initial quantity and multiplying by our conversion factor,

$$9\,c\,\cancel{pancake\,mix} \times \frac{1\,egg}{2\,c\,\cancel{pancake\,mix}} = 4.5\,eggs$$

Note how the units *cups pancake mix* canceled, leaving us with units of *eggs*. This is the formal, mathematical way of getting our amounts to mix with 9 c of pancake mix. We can use a similar conversion factor for the amount of milk:

$$9\,c\,\cancel{pancake\,mix} \times \frac{\frac{1}{2}c\,milk}{2\,c\,\cancel{pancake\,mix}} = 2.25\,c\,milk$$

Again, units cancel, and new units are introduced.

A balanced chemical equation is nothing more than *a recipe for a chemical reaction*. The difference is that a balanced chemical equation is written in terms of atoms and molecules, not cups, pounds, and eggs.

For example, consider the following chemical equation:

$$2\,\mathrm{H_2(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{H_2O(\ell)}$$

We can interpret this as, literally, "two hydrogen molecules react with one oxygen molecule to make two water molecules." That interpretation leads us directly to some equivalencies, just as our pancake recipe did:

2H_2 molecules ⇔ 1O_2 molecule ⇔ 2H_2O molecules

These equivalences allow us to construct conversion factors:

$$\frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{1\,molecule\,O_2}\;\frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O}\;\frac{1\,molecule\,H_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O}$$

and so forth. These conversions can be used to relate quantities of one substance to quantities of another. For example, suppose we need to know how many molecules of oxygen are needed to react with 16 molecules of H_2. As we did with converting units, we start with our given quantity and use the appropriate conversion factor:

$$16\,\cancel{molecules\,H_2}\times\frac{1\,molecules\,O_2}{2\,\cancel{molecules\,H_2}}=8\,molecules\,O_2$$

Note how the unit *molecules* H_2 cancels algebraically, just as any unit does in a conversion like this. The conversion factor came directly from the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. This is another reason why a properly balanced chemical equation is important.

✓ Example 4.1.1

How many molecules of SO_3 are needed to react with 144 molecules of Fe_2O_3 given this balanced chemical equation?

$$\mathrm{Fe_2O_3} + 3\,\mathrm{SO_3} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2(SO_4)_3}$$

Solution

We use the balanced chemical equation to construct a conversion factor between Fe_2O_3 and SO_3. The number of molecules of Fe_2O_3 goes on the bottom of our conversion factor so it cancels with our given amount, and the molecules of SO_3 go on the top. Thus, the appropriate conversion factor is

$$\frac{3\,molecules\,SO_3}{1\,molecule\,Fe_2O_3}$$

Starting with our given amount and applying the conversion factor, the result is

$$144\;\cancel{molecules}\;Fe_2O_3\times\frac{3\,molecules\,SO_3}{1\;\cancel{molecule}\;Fe_2O_3}=432\,molecules\,SO_3$$

We need 432 molecules of SO_3 to react with 144 molecules of Fe_2O_3.

? Exercise 4.1.1

How many molecules of H_2 are needed to react with 29 molecules of N_2 to make ammonia if the balanced chemical equation is:

$$\mathrm{N_2} + 3\,\mathrm{H_2} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NH_3}?$$

Answer

87 molecules

Chemical equations also allow us to make conversions regarding the number of atoms in a chemical reaction, because a chemical formula lists the number of atoms of each element in a compound. The formula $H2O$ indicates that there are two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom in each molecule, and these relationships can be used to make conversion factors:

$$\frac{2\,atoms\,H}{1\,molecule\,H_2O} \quad \frac{1\,molecule\,H_2O}{1\,atom\,O}$$

Conversion factors like this can also be used in stoichiometry calculations.

✓ Example 4.1.2

How many molecules of $\mathrm{NH3}$ can you make if you have 228 atoms of $\mathrm{H2}$?

Solution

From the formula, we know that one molecule of $\mathrm{NH3}$ has three H atoms. Use that fact as a conversion factor:

$$228\ \cancel{atoms\,H} \times \frac{1\,molecule\,NH_3}{3\ \cancel{atoms\,H}} = 76\,NH_3$$

? Exercise 4.1.2

How many molecules of $\mathrm{Fe_2(SO_4)_3}$ can you make from 777 atoms of S?

Answer

259 molecules

Summary

Quantities of substances can be related to each other using balanced chemical equations.

4.2: The Mole

Learning Objectives

- Describe the unit *mole*.
- Relate the mole quantity of substance to its mass.

So far, we have been talking about chemical substances in terms of individual atoms and molecules. Yet we do not typically deal with substances an atom or a molecule at a time; we work with millions, billions, and trillions of atoms and molecules at a time. We need a way to deal with macroscopic, rather than microscopic, amounts of matter. We need a unit of amount that relates quantities of substances on a scale that we can interact with.

Chemistry uses a unit called mole. A **mole** (mol) is a number of things equal to the number of atoms in exactly 12 g of carbon-12. Experimental measurements have determined that this number is very large:

$$1 \text{ mol} = 6.02214179 \times 10^{23} \text{ things}$$

Understand that a mole means a specific number of things, just like a dozen means a certain number of things—twelve, in the case of a dozen. But a mole is a much larger number of things. These things can be atoms, or molecules, or eggs; however, in chemistry, we usually use the mole to refer to the amounts of atoms or molecules. Although the number of things in a mole is known to eight decimal places, it is usually fine to use only two or three decimal places in calculations. The numerical value of things in a mole is often called *Avogadro's number* (N_A). *Avogadro's number* is also known as the *Avogadro constant*, after Amadeo Avogadro, an Italian chemist who first proposed its importance.

Example 4.2.1

How many molecules are present in 2.76 mol of H_2O? How many atoms is this?

Solution

The definition of a mole is an equality that can be used to construct a conversion factor. Also, because we know that there are three atoms in each molecule of H_2O, we can also determine the number of atoms in the sample.

$$2.76\ \cancel{mol\ H_2O} \times \frac{6.022 \times 10^{23} molecules\ H_2O}{\cancel{mol\ H_2O}} = 1.66 \times 10^{24} molecules\ H_2O$$

To determine the total number of atoms, we have

$$1.66 \times 10^{24}\ \cancel{molecules\ H_2O} \times \frac{3\ atoms}{1\ molecule} = 4.99 \times 10^{24}\ atoms$$

Exercise 4.2.1

How many molecules are present in 4.61×10^{-2} mol of O_2?

Answer

2.78×10^{22} molecules

How big is a mole? It is very large. Suppose you had a mole of dollar bills that need to be counted. If everyone on earth (about 6 billion people) counted one bill per second, it would take about 3.2 million years to count all the bills. A mole of sand would fill a cube about 32 km on a side. A mole of pennies stacked on top of each other would have about the same diameter as our galaxy, the Milky Way. A mole is a lot of things—but atoms and molecules are very tiny. One mole of carbon atoms would make a cube that is 1.74 cm on a side, small enough to carry in your pocket.

Why is the mole unit so important? It represents the link between the microscopic and the macroscopic, especially in terms of mass. *A mole of a substance has the same mass in grams as one unit (atom or molecules) has in atomic mass units*. The mole unit allows us to express amounts of atoms and molecules in visible amounts that we can understand.

For example, we already know that, by definition, a mole of carbon has a mass of exactly 12 g. This means that exactly 12 g of C has 6.022 × 10^{23} atoms:

$$12\text{ g C} = 6.022 \times 10^{23}\text{ atoms C}$$

We can use this equality as a conversion factor between the number of atoms of carbon and the number of grams of carbon. How many grams are there, say, in 1.50 × 10^{25} atoms of carbon? This is a one-step conversion:

$$1.50 \times 10^{25}\ \cancel{atoms\,C} \times \frac{12.0000\,g\,C}{6.022 \times 10^{23}\ \cancel{atoms\,C}} = 299\,g\,C$$

But it also goes beyond carbon. Previously we defined atomic and molecular masses as the number of atomic mass units per atom or molecule. Now we can do so in terms of grams. The atomic mass of an element is the number of grams in 1 mol of atoms of that element, while the molecular mass of a compound is the number of grams in 1 mol of molecules of that compound. Sometimes these masses are called **molar masses** to emphasize the fact that they are the mass for 1 mol of things. (The term *molar* is the adjective form of mole and has nothing to do with teeth.)

Here are some examples. The mass of a hydrogen atom is 1.0079 u; the mass of 1 mol of hydrogen atoms is 1.0079 g. Elemental hydrogen exists as a diatomic molecule, H_2. One molecule has a mass of 1.0079 + 1.0079 = 2.0158 u, while 1 mol H_2 has a mass of 2.0158 g. A molecule of H_2O has a mass of about 18.01 u; 1 mol H_2O has a mass of 18.01 g. A single unit of NaCl has a mass of 58.45 u; NaCl has a molar mass of 58.45 g. In each of these moles of substances, there are 6.022 × 10^{23} units: 6.022 × 10^{23} atoms of H, 6.022 × 10^{23} molecules of H_2 and H_2O, 6.022 × 10^{23} units of NaCl ions. These relationships give us plenty of opportunities to construct conversion factors for simple calculations.

Example 4.2.2: Sugar

What is the molar mass of sugar ($C_6H_{12}O_6$)?

Solution

To determine the molar mass, we simply add the atomic masses of the atoms in the molecular formula; but express the total in grams per mole, not atomic mass units. The masses of the atoms can be taken from the periodic table.

Solutions to Example 5.3.2

6 C = 6 × 12.011	= 72.066
12 H = 12 × 1.0079	= 12.0948
6 O = 6 × 15.999	= 95.994
TOTAL	= 180.155 g/mol

Per convention, the unit *grams per mole* is written as a fraction.

Exercise 4.2.2

What is the molar mass of $AgNO_3$?

Answer

169.87 g/mol

Knowing the molar mass of a substance, we can calculate the number of moles in a certain mass of a substance and vice versa, as these examples illustrate. The molar mass is used as the conversion factor.

Example 4.2.3

What is the mass of 3.56 mol of $HgCl_2$? The molar mass of $HgCl_2$ is 271.49 g/mol.

Solution

Use the molar mass as a conversion factor between moles and grams. Because we want to cancel the mole unit and introduce the gram unit, we can use the molar mass as given:

$$3.56\ \cancel{mol\,HgCl_2} \times \frac{271.49\,g\,HgCl_2}{\cancel{mol\,HgCl_2}} = 967\,g\,HgCl_2$$

? Exercise 4.2.3

What is the mass of 33.7 mol of H_2O?

Answer

607 g

✓ Example 4.2.4

How many moles of H_2O are present in 240.0 g of water (about the mass of a cup of water)?

Solution

Use the molar mass of H_2O as a conversion factor from mass to moles. The molar mass of water is

(1.0079 + 1.0079 + 15.999) = 18.015 g/mol.

However, because we want to cancel the gram unit and introduce moles, we need to take the reciprocal of this quantity, or 1 mol/18.015 g:

$$240.0\ \cancel{g\,H_2O} \times \frac{1\,mol\,H_2O}{18.015\ \cancel{g\,H_2O}} = 13.32\,mol\,H_2O$$

? Exercise 4.2.4

How many moles are present in 35.6 g of H_2SO_4 (molar mass = 98.08 g/mol)?

Answer

0.363 mol

Other conversion factors can be combined with the definition of mole—density, for example.

✓ Example 4.2.5

The density of ethanol is 0.789 g/mL. How many moles are in 100.0 mL of ethanol? The molar mass of ethanol is 46.08 g/mol.

Solution

Here, we use density to convert from volume to mass and then use the molar mass to determine the number of moles.

$$100\ \cancel{ml}\ ethanol \times \frac{0.789\,g}{\cancel{ml}} \times \frac{1\,mol}{46.08\ \cancel{g}} = 1.71\,mol\,ethanol$$

? Exercise 4.2.5

If the density of benzene, C_6H_6, is 0.879 g/mL, how many moles are present in 17.9 mL of benzene?

Answer

0.201 mol

Summary

The mole is a key unit in chemistry. The molar mass of a substance, in grams, is numerically equal to one atom's or molecule's mass in atomic mass units.

4.3: The Mole in Chemical Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Balance a chemical equation in terms of moles.
- Use the balanced equation to construct conversion factors in terms of moles.
- Calculate moles of one substance from moles of another substance using a balanced chemical equation.

Consider this balanced chemical equation:

$$2\,H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2\,H_2O$$

We interpret this as "two molecules of hydrogen react with one molecule of oxygen to make two molecules of water." The chemical equation is balanced as long as the coefficients are in the ratio 2:1:2. For instance, this chemical equation is also balanced:

$$100\,H_2 + 50\,O_2 \rightarrow 100\,H_2O$$

This equation is not conventional—because convention says that we use the lowest ratio of coefficients—but it is balanced. So is this chemical equation:

$$5,000\,H_2 + 2,500\,O_2 \rightarrow 5,000\,H_2O$$

Again, this is not conventional, but it is still balanced. Suppose we use a much larger number:

$$12.044 \times 10^{23} H_2 + 6.022 \times 10^{23} O_2 \rightarrow 12.044 \times 10^{23} H_2O$$

These coefficients are also in the ratio of 2:1:2. But these numbers are related to the number of things in a mole: the first and last numbers are two times Avogadro's number, while the second number is Avogadro's number. That means that the first and last numbers represent 2 mol, while the middle number is just 1 mol. Well, why not just use the number of moles in balancing the chemical equation?

$$2\,H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2\,H_2O$$

is the same balanced chemical equation we started with! What this means is that chemical equations are not just balanced in terms of molecules; *they are also balanced in terms of moles*. We can just as easily read this chemical equation as "two moles of hydrogen react with one mole of oxygen to make two moles of water." All balanced chemical reactions are balanced in terms of moles.

✓ Example $4.3.1$

Interpret this balanced chemical equation in terms of moles.

$$P_4 + 5\,O_2 \rightarrow P_4O_{10}$$

Solution

The coefficients represent the number of moles that react, not just molecules. We would speak of this equation as "one mole of molecular phosphorus reacts with five moles of elemental oxygen to make one mole of tetraphosphorus decoxide."

? Exercise $4.3.1$

Interpret this balanced chemical equation in terms of moles.

$$N_2 + 3\,H_2 \rightarrow 2\,NH_3$$

Answer

One mole of elemental nitrogen reacts with three moles of elemental hydrogen to produce two moles of ammonia.

In Section 4.1, we stated that a chemical equation is simply a recipe for a chemical reaction. As such, chemical equations also give us equivalents—equivalents between the reactants and the products. However, now we understand that *these equivalents are expressed in terms of moles*. Consider the chemical equation

$$2\,H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2\,H_2O$$

This chemical reaction gives us the following equivalents:

$$2 \text{ mol } H_2 \Leftrightarrow 1 \text{ mol } O_2 \Leftrightarrow 2 \text{ mol } H_2O$$

Any two of these quantities can be used to construct a conversion factor that lets us relate the number of moles of one substance to an equivalent number of moles of another substance. If, for example, we want to know how many moles of oxygen will react with 17.6 mol of hydrogen, we construct a conversion factor between 2 mol of H_2 and 1 mol of O_2 and use it to convert from moles of one substance to moles of another:

$$17.6\ \cancel{mol\,H_2} \times \frac{1\,mol\,O_2}{2\ \cancel{mol\,H_2}} = 8.80\,mol\,O_2$$

Note how the mol H_2 unit cancels, and mol O_2 is the new unit introduced. This is an example of a **mole-mole calculation,** when you start with moles of one substance and convert to moles of another substance by using the balanced chemical equation. The example may seem simple because the numbers are small, but numbers won't always be so simple!

✓ Example 4.3.2

For the balanced chemical equation

$$2\,C_4H_{10}(g) + 13\,O_2 \rightarrow 8\,CO_2(g) + 10\,H_2O(\ell)$$

if 154 mol of O_2 are reacted, how many moles of CO_2 are produced?

Solution

We are relating an amount of oxygen to an amount of carbon dioxide, so we need the equivalence between these two substances. According to the balanced chemical equation, the equivalence is

$$13 \text{ mol } O_2 \Leftrightarrow 8 \text{ mol } CO_2$$

We can use this equivalence to construct the proper conversion factor. We start with what we are given and apply the conversion factor:

$$154\ \cancel{mol\,O_2} \times \frac{8\,mol\,CO_2}{13\ \cancel{mol\,O_2}} = 94.8\,mol\,CO_2$$

The mol O_2 unit is in the denominator of the conversion factor so it cancels. Both the 8 and the 13 are exact numbers, so they do not contribute to the number of significant figures in the final answer.

? Exercise 4.3.2

Using the above equation, how many moles of H_2O are produced when 154 mol of O_2 react?

Answer

118 mol

It is important to reiterate that balanced chemical equations are balanced in terms of *moles*. Not grams, kilograms, or liters—but moles. Any stoichiometry problem will likely need to work through the mole unit at some point, especially if you are working with a balanced chemical reaction.

Summary

Balanced chemical reactions are balanced in terms of moles. A balanced chemical reaction gives equivalents in moles that allow stoichiometry calculations to be performed.

4.4: Mole-Mass and Mass-Mass Calculations

Learning Objectives

- From a given number of moles of a substance, calculate the mass of another substance involved using the balanced chemical equation.
- From a given mass of a substance, calculate the moles of another substance involved using the balanced chemical equation.
- From a given mass of a substance, calculate the mass of another substance involved using the balanced chemical equation.

Mole-mole calculations are not the only type of calculations that can be performed using balanced chemical equations. Recall that the molar mass can be determined from a chemical formula and used as a conversion factor. We can add that conversion factor as another step in a calculation to make a **mole-mass calculation**, where we start with a given number of moles of a substance and calculate the mass of another substance involved in the chemical equation, or vice versa.

For example, suppose we have the balanced chemical equation

$$2Al + 3Cl_2 \rightarrow 2AlCl_3$$

Suppose we know we have 123.2 g of Cl_2. How can we determine how many moles of $AlCl_3$ we will get when the reaction is complete? First and foremost, *chemical equations are not balanced in terms of grams; they are balanced in terms of moles*. So to use the balanced chemical equation to relate an amount of Cl_2 to an amount of $AlCl_3$, we need to convert the given amount of Cl_2 into moles. We know how to do this by simply using the molar mass of Cl_2 as a conversion factor. The molar mass of Cl_2 (which we get from the atomic mass of Cl from the periodic table) is 70.90 g/mol. We must invert this fraction so that the units cancel properly:

$$123.2\ \cancel{g\,Cl_2} \times \frac{1\,mol\,Cl_2}{70.90\ \cancel{g\,Cl_2}} = 1.738\ mol\,Cl_2$$

Now that we have the quantity in moles, we can use the balanced chemical equation to construct a conversion factor that relates the number of moles of Cl_2 to the number of moles of $AlCl_3$. The numbers in the conversion factor come from the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation:

$$\frac{2\,mol\,AlCl_3}{3\,mol\,Cl_2}$$

Using this conversion factor with the molar quantity we calculated above, we get

$$1.738\ \cancel{mol\,Cl_2} \times \frac{2\,mol\,AlCl_3}{3\ \cancel{mol\,Cl_2}} = 1.159\,mol\,AlCl_3$$

So, we will get 1.159 mol of $AlCl_3$ if we react 123.2 g of Cl_2.

In this last example, we did the calculation in two steps. However, it is mathematically equivalent to perform the two calculations sequentially on one line:

$$123.2\ \cancel{g\,Cl_2} \times \frac{1\,mol\,Cl_2}{70.90\ \cancel{g\,Cl_2}} \times \frac{2\,mol\,AlCl_3}{3\ \cancel{mol\,Cl_2}} = 1.159\,mol\,AlCl_3$$

The units still cancel appropriately, and we get the same numerical answer in the end. Sometimes the answer may be slightly different from doing it one step at a time because of rounding of the intermediate answers, but the final answers should be effectively the same.

Example 4.4.1

How many moles of HCl will be produced when 249 g of $AlCl_3$ are reacted according to this chemical equation?

$$2AlCl_3 + 3H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + 6HCl(g)$$

Solution

We will do this in two steps: convert the mass of $AlCl_3$ to moles and then use the balanced chemical equation to find the number of moles of HCl formed. The molar mass of $AlCl_3$ is 133.33 g/mol, which we have to invert to get the appropriate conversion factor:

$$249\;\;g\,\cancel{AlCl_3}\times\frac{1\,mol\,AlCl_3}{133.33\;\;g\,\cancel{AlCl_3}}=1.87\,mol\,AlCl_3$$

Now we can use this quantity to determine the number of moles of HCl that will form. From the balanced chemical equation, we construct a conversion factor between the number of moles of $AlCl_3$ and the number of moles of HCl:

$$frac6\,mol\,HCl2\;\;mol\,\cancel{AlCl_3}$$

Applying this conversion factor to the quantity of $AlCl_3$, we get

$$1.87\;\;mol\,\cancel{AlCl_3}\times\frac{6\,mol\,HCl}{2\;\;mol\,\cancel{AlCl_3}}=5.61\,mol\,HCl$$

Alternatively, we could have done this in one line:

$$249\;\;g\,\cancel{AlCl_3}\times\frac{1\;\;mol\,\cancel{AlCl_3}}{133.33\;\;g\,\cancel{AlCl_3}}\times\frac{6\,mol\,HCl}{2\;\;mol\,\cancel{AlCl_3}}=5.60\,mol\,HCl$$

The last digit in our final answer is slightly different because of rounding differences, but the answer is essentially the same.

? Exercise 4.4.1

How many moles of Al_2O_3 will be produced when 23.9 g of H_2O are reacted according to this chemical equation?

$$2AlCl_3+3H_2O(\ell)\rightarrow Al_2O_3+6HCl(g)$$

Answer

0.442 mol

A variation of the mole-mass calculation is to start with an amount in moles and then determine an amount of another substance in grams. The steps are the same but are performed in reverse order.

✓ Example 4.4.2

How many grams of NH_3 will be produced when 33.9 mol of H_2 are reacted according to this chemical equation?

$$N_2(g)+3H_2(g)\rightarrow 2NH_3(g)$$

Solution

The conversions are the same, but they are applied in a different order. Start by using the balanced chemical equation to convert to moles of another substance and then use its molar mass to determine the mass of the final substance. In two steps, we have

$$33.9\,mol\,\cancel{H_2}\times\frac{2\,mol\,NH_3}{3\,mol\,\cancel{H_2}}=22.6\,mol\,NH_3$$

Now, using the molar mass of NH_3, which is 17.03 g/mol, we get

$$22.6\,mol\,\cancel{NH_3}\times\frac{17.03\,g\,NH_3}{1\,mol\,\cancel{NH_3}}=385\,g\,NH_3$$

? Exercise 4.4.2

How many grams of N_2 are needed to produce 2.17 mol of NH_3 when reacted according to this chemical equation?

$$\mathrm{N_2(g) + 3\,H_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,NH_3(g)}$$

Answer

30.4 g (Note: here we go from a product to a reactant, showing that mole-mass problems can begin and end with any substance in the chemical equation.)

It should be a trivial task now to extend the calculations to **mass-mass calculations**, in which we start with a mass of some substance and end with the mass of another substance in the chemical reaction. For this type of calculation, the molar masses of two different substances must be used—be sure to keep track of which is which. Again, however, it is important to emphasize that before the balanced chemical reaction is used, the mass quantity must first be converted to moles. Then the coefficients of the balanced chemical reaction can be used to convert to moles of another substance, which can then be converted to a mass.

For example, let us determine the number of grams of SO_3 that can be produced by the reaction of 45.3 g of SO_2 and O_2:

$$2SO_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2SO_3(g)$$

First, we convert the given amount, 45.3 g of SO_2, to moles of SO_2 using its molar mass (64.06 g/mol):

$$45.3\ g\,\cancel{SO_2} \times \frac{1\,mol\,SO_2}{64.06\ g\,\cancel{SO_2}} = 0.707\,mol\,SO_2$$

Second, we use the balanced chemical reaction to convert from moles of SO_2 to moles of SO_3:

$$0.707\ mol\,\cancel{SO_2} \times \frac{2\,mol\,SO_3}{2\ mol\,\cancel{SO_2}} = 0.707\,mol\,SO_3$$

Finally, we use the molar mass of SO_3 (80.06 g/mol) to convert to the mass of SO_3:

$$0.707\ mol\,\cancel{SO_3} \times \frac{80.06\,g\,SO_3}{1\ mol\,\cancel{SO_3}} = 56.6\,g\,SO_3$$

We can also perform all three steps sequentially, writing them on one line as

$$45.3\ g\,\cancel{SO_2} \times \frac{1\,mol\,SO_2}{64.06\ g\,\cancel{SO_2}} \times \frac{2\,mol\,SO_3}{2\ mol\,\cancel{SO_2}} \times \frac{80.06\,g\,SO_3}{1\ mol\,\cancel{SO_3}} = 56.6\,g\,SO_3$$

We get the same answer. Note how the initial and all the intermediate units cancel, leaving grams of SO_3, which is what we are looking for, as our final answer.

✓ Example 4.4.3

What mass of Mg will be produced when 86.4 g of K are reacted?

$$\mathrm{MgCl_2(s) + 2\,K(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2\,KCl(s)}$$

Solution

We will simply follow the steps

mass K → mol K → mol Mg → mass Mg

In addition to the balanced chemical equation, we need the molar masses of K (39.09 g/mol) and Mg (24.31 g/mol). In one line,

$$86.4\ g\,\cancel{K} \times \frac{1\,mol\,K}{39.09\ g\,\cancel{K}} \times \frac{1\ \ mol\,\cancel{Mg}}{2\ mol\,\cancel{K}} \times \frac{24.31\,g\,Mg}{1\ mol\,\cancel{Mg}} = 26.87\,g\,Mg$$

Exercise 4.4.3

What mass of H_2 will be produced when 122 g of Zn are reacted?

$$Zn(s) + 2\,HCl(aq) \rightarrow ZnCl_2(aq) + H_2(g)$$

Answer

3.77 g

Summary

- Mole quantities of one substance can be related to mass quantities using a balanced chemical equation.
- Mass quantities of one substance can be related to mass quantities using a balanced chemical equation.
- In all cases, quantities of a substance must be converted to moles before the balanced chemical equation can be used to convert to moles of another substance.

4.5: Yields

Learning Objective

- Define and determine theoretical yields, actual yields, and percent yields.

In all the previous calculations we have performed involving balanced chemical equations, we made two assumptions:

1. The reaction goes exactly as written.
2. The reaction proceeds completely.

In reality, such things as side reactions occur that make some chemical reactions rather messy. For example, in the actual combustion of some carbon-containing compounds, such as methane, some CO is produced as well as CO_2. However, we will continue to ignore side reactions, unless otherwise noted. The second assumption, that the reaction proceeds completely, is more troublesome. Many chemical reactions do not proceed to completion as written, for a variety of reasons (some of which we will consider in Chapter 13). When we calculate an amount of product assuming that all the reactant reacts, we calculate the **theoretical yield**, an amount that is theoretically produced as calculated using the balanced chemical reaction.

In many cases, however, this is not what really happens. In many cases, less—sometimes, much less—of a product is made during the course of a chemical reaction. The amount that is actually produced in a reaction is called the **actual yield**. By definition, the actual yield is less than or equal to the theoretical yield. If it is not, then an error has been made.

Both theoretical yields and actual yields are expressed in units of moles or grams. It is also common to see something called a percent yield. The **percent yield** is a comparison between the actual yield and the theoretical yield and is defined as

$$\text{percent yield} = \frac{\text{actual yield}}{\text{theoretical yield}} \times 100\% \tag{4.5.1}$$

It does not matter whether the actual and theoretical yields are expressed in moles or grams, as long as they are expressed in the same units. However, the percent yield always has units of percent. Proper percent yields are between 0% and 100%. Again, if percent yield is greater than 100%, an error has been made.

Example 4.5.1

A worker reacts 30.5 g of Zn with nitric acid and evaporates the remaining water to obtain 65.2 g of $Zn(NO_3)_2$. What are the theoretical yield, the actual yield, and the percent yield?

$$\mathrm{Zn(s) + 2\,HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Zn(NO_3)_2(aq) + H_2(g)}$$

Solution

A mass-mass calculation can be performed to determine the theoretical yield. We need the molar masses of Zn (65.39 g/mol) and $Zn(NO_3)_2$ (189.41 g/mol). In three steps, the mass-mass calculation is:

$$30.5\ g\,\cancel{Zn} \times \frac{1\ mol\,\cancel{Zn}}{65.39\ g\,\cancel{Zn}} \times \frac{1\ mol\,\cancel{Zn(NO_3)_2}}{1\ mol\,\cancel{Zn}} \times \frac{189.41\,g\,Zn(NO_3)_2}{1\ mol\,\cancel{Zn(NO_3)_2}} = 88.3\,g\,Zn(NO_3)_2$$

Thus, the theoretical yield is 88.3 g of $Zn(NO_3)_2$. The actual yield is the amount that was actually made, which was 65.2 g of $Zn(NO_3)_2$. To calculate the percent yield, we take the actual yield and divide it by the theoretical yield and multiply by 100 (Equation 4.5.1):

$$\frac{65.2\,g\,Zn(NO_3)_2}{88.3\,g\,Zn(NO_3)_2} \times 100\% = 73.8\%$$

The worker achieved almost three-fourths of the possible yield.

Exercise 4.5.1

A synthesis produced 2.05 g of NH_3 from 16.5 g of N_2. What is the theoretical yield and the percent yield?

$$N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow 2NH_3(g)$$

*Technically, this is a reversible reaction (with double arrows), but for this exercise consider it irreversible (single arrow).

Answer

theoretical yield = 20.1 g; percent yield = 10.2%

Chemistry is Everywhere: Actual Yields in Drug Synthesis and Purification

Many drugs are the product of several steps of chemical synthesis. Each step typically occurs with less than 100% yield, so the overall percent yield might be very small. The general rule is that the overall percent yield is the product of the percent yields of the individual synthesis steps. For a drug synthesis that has many steps, the overall percent yield can be very tiny, which is one factor in the huge cost of some drugs. For example, if a 10-step synthesis has a percent yield of 90% for each step, the overall yield for the entire synthesis is only 35%. Many scientists work every day trying to improve percent yields of the steps in the synthesis to decrease costs, improve profits, and minimize waste.

Even purifications of complex molecules into drug-quality purity are subject to percent yields. Consider the purification of impure albuterol. Albuterol ($C_{13}H_{21}NO_2$; accompanying figure) is an inhaled drug used to treat asthma, bronchitis, and other obstructive pulmonary diseases. It is synthesized from norepinephrine, a naturally occurring hormone and neurotransmitter. Its initial synthesis makes very impure albuterol that is purified in five chemical steps. The details of the steps do not concern us; only the percent yields do:

A child using an albuterol inhaler, a container of albuterol medication, and a molecular model of albuterol are shown in three combined images.

impure albuterol → intermediate A	percent yield = 70%
intermediate A → intermediate B	percent yield = 100%
intermediate B → intermediate C	percent yield = 40%
intermediate C → intermediate D	percent yield = 72%
intermediate D → purified albuterol	percent yield = 35%
overall percent yield = 70% × 100% × 40% × 72% × 35% = 7.5%	

That is, only about *one-fourteenth* of the original material was turned into the purified drug. This demonstrates one reason why some drugs are so expensive—a lot of material is lost in making a high-purity pharmaceutical.

Figure 4.5.1 A child using an albuterol inhaler, the container of albuterol medication, and a molecular model of the albuterol molecule. Source: Photo on far left © Thinkstock. Photo in center courtesy of Intropin, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/Fi...te_%281%29.JPG.

Summary

Theoretical yield is the calculated yield using the balanced chemical reaction. Actual yield is what is actually obtained in a chemical reaction. Percent yield is a comparison of the actual yield with the theoretical yield.

4.6: Limiting Reagents

Learning Objectives

- Identify a limiting reagent from a set of reactants.
- Calculate how much product will be produced from the limiting reagent.
- Calculate how much reactant(s) remains when the reaction is complete.

In addition to the assumption that reactions proceed all the way to completion, one additional assumption we have made about chemical reactions is that all the reactants are present in the proper quantities to react to products; this is not always the case. In Figure 4.6.2 we are taking hydrogen atoms and oxygen atoms (left) to make water molecules (right). However, there are not enough oxygen atoms to use up all the hydrogen atoms. We run out of oxygen atoms and cannot make any more water molecules, so the process stops when we run out of oxygen atoms.

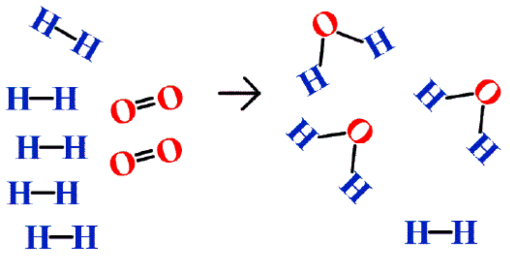


Figure 4.6.2: Making Water. In this scenario for making water molecules, we run out of O atoms before we use up all the H atoms. Similar situations exist for many chemical reactions when one reactant runs out before the other.

A similar situation exists for many chemical reactions: you usually run out of one reactant before all of the other reactant has reacted. The reactant you run out of is called the limiting reagent; the other reactant or reactants are considered to be *in excess*. A crucial skill in evaluating the conditions of a chemical process is to determine which reactant is the limiting reagent and which is in excess.

The key to recognizing which reactant is the limiting reagent is based on a mole-mass or mass-mass calculation: whichever reactant gives the *lesser* amount of product is the limiting reagent. What we need to do is determine an amount of one product (either moles or mass), assuming all of each reactant reacts. Whichever reactant gives the least amount of that particular product is the limiting reagent. It does not matter which product we use, as long as we use the same one each time. It does not matter whether we determine the number of moles or grams of that product; however, we will see shortly that knowing the final mass of product can be useful.

For example, consider this reaction:

$$4As(s)+3O_2(g)\rightarrow 2As_2O_3(s)$$

Suppose we start a reaction with 50.0 g of As and 50.0 g of O_2. Which one is the limiting reagent? We need to perform two mole-mass calculations, each assuming that each reactant reacts completely. Then we compare the amount of the product produced by each and determine which is less.

The calculations are as follows:

$$50.0\ g\,\cancel{As}\times\frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{As}}{74.92\ g\,\cancel{As}}\times\frac{2\,mol\,As_2O_3}{4\ mol\ \cancel{As}}=0.334\,mol\,As_2O_3$$

$$50.0\ g\,\cancel{O_2}\times\frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{O_2}}{32.00\ g\,\cancel{O_2}}\times\frac{2\,mol\,As_2O_3}{3\ mol\ \cancel{O_2}}=1.04\,mol\,As_2O_3$$

Comparing these two answers, it is clear that 0.334 mol of As_2O_3 is less than 1.04 mol of As_2O_3, so arsenic is the limiting reagent. If this reaction is performed under these initial conditions, the arsenic will run out before the oxygen runs out. We say that the oxygen is "in excess."

Identifying the limiting reagent, then, is straightforward. However, there are usually two associated questions: (1) what mass of product (or products) is then actually formed? and (2) what mass of what reactant is left over? The first question is straightforward to answer: simply perform a conversion from the number of moles of product formed to its mass, using its molar mass. For As_2O_3, the molar mass is 197.84 g/mol; knowing that we will form 0.334 mol of As_2O_3 under the given conditions, we will get

$$0.334\ mol\ \cancel{As_2O_3} \times \frac{197.84\,g\,As_2}{1\,mol\ \cancel{As_2O_3}} = 66.1\,g\,As_2O_3$$

The second question is somewhat more convoluted to answer. First, we must do a mass-mass calculation relating the limiting reagent (here, As) to the other reagent (O_2). Once we determine the mass of O_2 that reacted, we subtract that from the original amount to determine the amount left over. According to the mass-mass calculation,

$$50.0\ g\ \cancel{As} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{As}}{74.92\ g\ \cancel{As}} \times \frac{3\ mol\ \cancel{O_2}}{4\ mol\ \cancel{As}} \times \frac{32.00\,g\,O_2}{1\,mol\ \cancel{O_2}} = 16.0\,g\,O_2\ reacted$$

Because we reacted 16.0 g of our original O_2, we subtract that from the original amount, 50.0 g, to get the mass of O_2 remaining:

50.0 g O_2 − 16.0 g O_2 reacted = 34.0 g O_2 left over

You must remember to perform this final subtraction to determine the amount remaining; a common error is to report the 16.0 g as the amount remaining.

✓ Example 4.6.1

A 5.00 g quantity of Rb is combined with 3.44 g of $MgCl_2$ according to this chemical reaction:

$$2Rb(s) + MgCl_2(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2RbCl(s)$$

What mass of Mg is formed, and what mass of what reactant is left over?

Solution

Because the question asks what mass of magnesium is formed, we can perform two mass-mass calculations and determine which amount is less.

$$5.00\ g\ \cancel{Rb} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Rb}}{85.47\ g\ \cancel{Rb}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Mg}}{2\ mol\ \cancel{Rb}} \times \frac{24.31\,g\,Mg}{1\,mol\ \cancel{Mg}} = 0.711\,g\,Mg$$

$$3.44\ g\ \cancel{MgCl_2} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{MgCl_2}}{95.21\ g\ \cancel{MgCl_2}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Mg}}{1\ mol\ \cancel{MgCl_2}} \times \frac{24.31\,g\,Mg}{1\,mol\ \cancel{Mg}} = 0.878\,g\,Mg$$

The 0.711 g of Mg is the lesser quantity, so the associated reactant—5.00 g of Rb—is the limiting reagent. To determine how much of the other reactant is left, we have to do one more mass-mass calculation to determine what mass of $MgCl_2$ reacted with the 5.00 g of Rb, and then subtract the amount reacted from the original amount.

$$5.00\ g\ \cancel{Rb} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Rb}}{85.47\ g\ \cancel{Rb}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{MgCl_2}}{2\ mol\ \cancel{Rb}} \times \frac{95.21\,g\,Mg}{1\,mol\ \cancel{MgCl_2}} = 2.78\,g\,MgCl_2\ \ reacted$$

Because we started with 3.44 g of $MgCl_2$, we have

3.44 g $MgCl_2$ − 2.78 g $MgCl_2$ reacted = 0.66 g $MgCl_2$ left

? Exercise 4.6.1

Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and what is the mass of the leftover reagent?

$$\underbrace{22.7\,g}_{MgO(s)} + \underbrace{17.9\,g}_{H_2S} \rightarrow MgS(s) + H_2O(l)$$

Answer

H_2S is the limiting reagent; 1.5 g of MgO are left over.

Summary

The limiting reagent is the reactant that produces the least amount of product. Mass-mass calculations can determine how much product is produced and how much of the other reactants remain.

4.7: Energy

Learning Objectives

- Define *energy*.
- Know the units of energy.
- Understand the law of conservation of energy.

Energy is the ability to do work. Think about it: when you have a lot of energy, you can do a lot of work; but if you're low on energy, you do not want to do much work. Work (w) itself is defined as a force (F) operating over a distance (Δx):

$$w = F \times \Delta x$$

In SI, force has units of newtons (N), while distance has units of meters. Therefore, work has units of N·m. This compound unit is redefined as a **Joule (J)**.

$$1 \text{ joule} = 1 \text{ newton}\cdot\text{meter}1 \text{ J} = 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

Because energy is the ability to do work, energy is also measured in joules. This is the primary unit of energy we will use here.

How much is 1 J? It is enough to warm up about one-fourth of a gram of water by 1°C. It takes about 12,000 J to warm a cup of coffee from room temperature to 50°C. So a joule is not a lot of energy. It will not be uncommon to measure energies in thousands of joules, so the kilojoule (kJ) is a common unit of energy, with 1 kJ equal to 1,000 J.

An older—but still common—unit of energy is the *calorie*. The calorie (cal) was originally defined in terms of warming up a given quantity of water. The modern definition of calorie equates it to joules:

$$1 \text{ cal} = 4.184 \text{ J}$$

The calorie is used when considering nutrition. Energy contents of foods are often expressed in calories. However, the calorie unit used for foods is actually the kilocalorie (kcal). Most foods indicate this by spelling the word with a capital C—Calorie. Figure 4.7.1 - Calories on Food Labels, shows one example.

Nutrition Facts

Serving Size 3 oz. (85g)

Amount Per Serving	As Served
Calories 38	**Calories from Fat** 0
	% Daily Value
Total Fat 0g	0%
Saturated Fat 0g	0%
Cholesterol 0g	0%
Sodium 0g	2%
Total Carbohydrate 0g	3%
Dietary Fiber 0g	8%
Sugars 0g	
Protein 0g	

Vitamin A 270% • **Vitamin C** 10%

Calcium 2% • **Iron** 0%

Percent Daily Values are based on a 2,000 calorie diet. Your daily values may be higher or lower depending on your calorie needs:

	Calories	2,000	2,500
Total Fat	Less than	65g	80g
Sat Fat	Less than	20g	80g
Cholesterol	Less than	300mg	300mg
Sodium	Less than	2,400mg	2,400mg
Total Carbohydrate		300g	375g
Dietary Fiber		25g	30g

Figure 4.7.1 Calories on Food Labels © Thinkstock. *This label expresses the energy content of the food, but in Calories (which are actually kilocalories).*

✓ Example 4.7.1

The label in Figure 4.7.1 states that the serving has 38 Cal. How many joules is this?

Solution

We recognize that with a capital C, the Calories unit is actually kilocalories. To determine the number of joules, we convert first from kilocalories to calories (using the definition of the *kilo-* prefix) and then from calories to joules (using the relationship between calories and joules). So

$$38\ \cancel{kcal} \times \frac{1000\ \cancel{cal}}{1\ \cancel{kcal}} \times \frac{4.184\ J}{1\ \cancel{cal}} = 160,000\ J$$

? Exercise 4.7.1

A serving of breakfast cereal usually has 110 Cal. How many joules of energy is this?

Answer

460,000 J

In the study of energy, we use the term **system** to describe the part of the universe under study: a beaker, a flask, or a container whose contents are being observed and measured. An **isolated system** is a system that does not allow a transfer of energy or matter into or out of the system. A good approximation of an isolated system is a closed, insulated thermos-type bottle. The fact that the thermos-type bottle is closed keeps matter from moving in or out, and the fact that it is insulated keeps energy from moving in or out.

One of the fundamental ideas about the total energy of an isolated system is that it does not increase or decrease. When this happens to a quantity, we say that the quantity is *conserved*. The **law of conservation of energy** states that the total energy of an isolated system does not change. As a scientific law, this concept occupies the highest level of understanding we have about the natural universe.

Key Takeaways

- Energy is the ability to do work and uses the unit joule.
- The law of conservation of energy states that the total energy of an isolated system does not increase or decrease.

4.8: Work and Heat

Learning Objectives

- Define a type of work in terms of pressure and volume.
- Define *heat*.
- Relate the amount of heat to a temperature change.

We have already defined work as a force acting through a distance. There are other equivalent definitions of work that are also important in chemistry.

When a certain volume of a gas expands, it works against an external pressure to expand (Figure 4.8.1 - Volume versus Pressure). That is, the gas must perform work. Assuming that the external pressure P_{ext} is constant, the amount of work done by the gas is given by the equation

$$w = -P_{ext} \times \Delta V$$

where ΔV is the change in volume of the gas. This term is always the final volume minus the initial volume,

$$\Delta V = V_{final} - V_{initial}$$

and can be positive or negative, depending on whether V_{final} is larger (is expanding) or smaller (is contracting) than $V_{initial}$. The negative sign in the equation for work is important and implies that as volume expands (ΔV is positive), the gas in the system is *losing* energy as work. On the other hand, if the gas is contracting, ΔV is negative, and the two negative signs make the work positive, so energy is being added to the system.

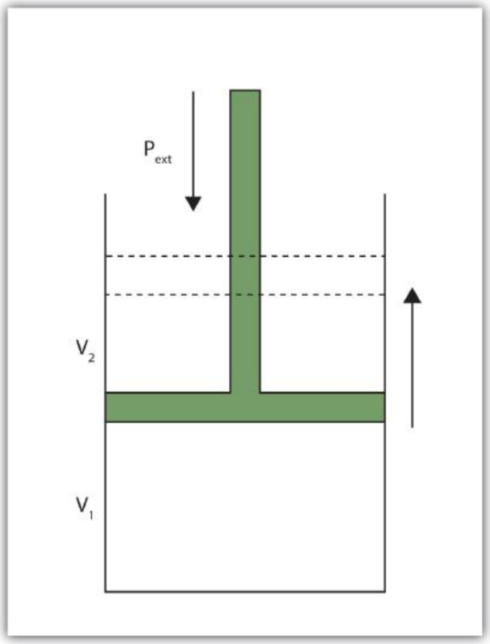


Figure 4.8.1 Volume versus Pressure. *When a gas expands against an external pressure, the gas does work.*

Finally, let us consider units. Volume changes are usually expressed in units like liters, while pressures are usually expressed in atmospheres. When we use the equation to determine work, the unit for work comes out as liter·atmospheres, or L·atm. This is not a very common unit for work. However, there is a conversion factor between L·atm and the common unit of work, joules:

1 L·atm = 101.32 J

Using this conversion factor and the previous equation for work, we can calculate the work performed when a gas expands or contracts.

✓ Example 4.8.1

What is the work performed by a gas if it expands from 3.44 L to 6.19 L against a constant external pressure of 1.26 atm? Express the final answer in joules.

Solution

First we need to determine the change in volume, ΔV. A change is always the final value minus the initial value:

$$\Delta V = V_{\text{final}} - V_{\text{initial}} = 6.19\text{ L} - 3.44\text{ L} = 2.75\text{ L}$$

Now we can use the definition of work to determine the work done:

$$w = -P_{\text{ext}} \cdot \Delta V = -(1.26\text{ atm})(2.75\text{ L}) = -3.47\text{ L·atm}$$

Now we construct a conversion factor from the relationship between liter·atmospheres and joules:

$$-3.47\ L.\cancel{atm} \times \times \frac{101.32\ J}{1\ L.\cancel{atm}} = -351\ J$$

We limit the final answer to three significant figures, as appropriate.

? Exercise 4.8.1

What is the work performed when a gas expands from 0.66 L to 1.33 L against an external pressure of 0.775 atm?

Answer

−53 J

Heat is another aspect of energy. **Heat** is the transfer of energy from one body to another due to a difference in temperature. For example, when we touch something with our hands, we interpret that object as either hot or cold depending on how energy is transferred: If energy is transferred into your hands, the object feels hot. If energy is transferred from your hands to the object, your hands feel cold. Because heat is a measure of energy transfer, heat is also measured in joules.

For a given object, the amount of heat (q) involved is proportional to two things: the mass of the object (m) and the temperature change (ΔT) evoked by the energy transfer. We can write this mathematically as

$$q \alpha\, m \times \Delta T$$

where ∝ means "is proportional to." To make a proportionality an equality, we include a proportionality constant. In this case, the proportionality constant is labeled c and is called the **specific heat capacity**, or, more succinctly, **specific heat**:

\[q = mcΔT \nonumber \]

where the mass, specific heat, and change in temperature are multiplied together. Specific heat is a measure of how much energy is needed to change the temperature of a substance; the larger the specific heat, the more energy is needed to change the temperature. The units for specific heat are

$$\frac{J}{g.C}\ or\ \frac{J}{g.K}$$

depending on what the unit of ΔT is. You may note a departure from the insistence that temperature be expressed in Kelvin. That is because a *change* in temperature has the same value whether the temperatures are expressed in degrees Celsius or kelvins.

✓ Example 4.8.2

Calculate the heat involved when 25.0 g of Fe increase temperature from 22°C to 76°C. The specific heat of Fe is 0.449 J/g·°C.

Solution

First we need to determine ΔT. A change is always the final value minus the initial value:

$$\Delta T = 76°\text{C} - 22°\text{C} = 54°\text{C}$$

Now we can use the expression for *q*, substitute for all variables, and solve for heat:

$$q = (25.0\,g)(0.449\,\frac{J}{g.^{\circ}\,C})(54^{\circ}C) = 610\,J$$

Note how the g and °C units cancel, leaving J, a unit of heat. Also note that this value of *q* is inherently positive, meaning that energy is going into the system.

? Exercise 4.8.2

Calculate the heat involved when 76.5 g of Ag increase temperature from 17.8°C to 144.5°C. The specific heat of Ag is 0.233 J/g·°C.

Answer

2,260 J

As with any equation, when you know all but one variable in the expression for *q*, you can determine the remaining variable by using algebra.

✓ Example 4.8.3

It takes 5,408 J of heat to raise the temperature of 373 g of Hg by 104°C. What is the specific heat of Hg?

Solution

We can start with the equation for *q*, but now different values are given, and we need to solve for specific heat. Note that ΔT is given directly as 104°C. Substituting,

$$5{,}408\text{ J} = (373\text{ g})c(104°\text{C})$$

We divide both sides of the equation by 373 g and 104°C:

$$c = \frac{5408\,J}{(373g)(104^{\circ}C)}$$

Combining the numbers and bringing together all the units, we get

$$c = 0.139\frac{J}{g.^{\circ}\,C}$$

? Exercise 4.8.3

Gold has a specific heat of 0.129 J/g·°C. If 1,377 J are needed to increase the temperature of a sample of gold by 99.9°C, what is the mass of the gold?

Answer

107 g

Table 4.8.1: Specific Heats of Various Substances, lists the specific heats of some substances. Specific heat is a physical property of substances, so it is a characteristic of the substance. The general idea is that the lower the specific heat, the less energy is required to change the temperature of the substance by a certain amount.

Table 4.8.1: Specific Heats of Various Substances.

Substance	Specific Heat (J/g·°C)
water	4.184
iron	0.449

Substance	Specific Heat (J/g·°C)
gold	0.129
mercury	0.139
aluminum	0.900
ethyl alcohol	2.419
magnesium	1.03
helium	5.171
oxygen	0.918

Key Takeaways

- Work can be defined as a gas changing volume against a constant external pressure.
- Heat is the transfer of energy due to temperature differences.
- Heat can be calculated in terms of mass, temperature change, and specific heat.

4.9: Enthalpy and Chemical Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Define *enthalpy*.
- Properly express the enthalpy change of chemical reactions.
- Explain how enthalpy changes are measured experimentally.

Now that we have shown how energy, work, and heat are related, we are ready to consider energy changes in chemical reactions. A fundamental concept is that *every chemical reaction occurs with a concurrent change in energy*. Now we need to learn how to properly express these energy changes.

Our study of gases in Chapter 6, and our definition of work in Section 7.3, indicate that conditions like pressure, volume, and temperature affect the energy content of a system. What we need is a definition of energy that holds when some of these conditions are specified (somewhat similar to our definition of standard temperature and pressure in our study of gases). We define the **enthalpy change** (ΔH) as the heat of a process when pressure is held constant:

$$\Delta H \equiv q \ at \ constant \ pressure$$

The letter H stands for "enthalpy," a kind of energy, while the Δ implies a change in the quantity. We will always be interested in the change in H, rather than the absolute value of H itself.

When a chemical reaction occurs, there is a characteristic change in enthalpy. The enthalpy change for a reaction is typically written after a balanced chemical equation and on the same line. For example, when two moles of hydrogen react with one mole of oxygen to make two moles of water, the characteristic enthalpy change is 570 kJ. We write the equation as

$$2\,H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell)$$

with $\Delta H = -570\,kJ$

A chemical equation that includes an enthalpy change is called a **thermochemical equation**. A thermochemical equation is assumed to refer to the equation in molar quantities, which means it must be interpreted in terms of moles, not individual molecules.

✓ Example 4.9.1

Write the thermochemical equation for the reaction of $PCl_3(g)$ with $Cl_2(g)$ to make $PCl_5(g)$, which has an enthalpy change of −88 kJ.

Solution

The thermochemical equation is

$$PCl_3(g) + Cl_2(g) \rightarrow PCl_5(g) \quad \Delta H = -88\ kJ$$

? Exercise 4.9.1

Write the thermochemical equation for the reaction of $N_2(g)$ with $O_2(g)$ to make 2NO(g), which has an enthalpy change of 181 kJ.

Answer

$$N_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2NO(g) \quad \Delta H = 181\ kJ$$

You may have noticed that the ΔH for a chemical reaction may be positive or negative. The number is assumed to be positive if it has no sign; a + sign can be added explicitly to avoid confusion. A chemical reaction that has a positive ΔH is said to be **endothermic**, while a chemical reaction that has a negative ΔH is said to be **exothermic**.

What does it mean if the ΔH of a process is positive? It means that the system in which the chemical reaction is occurring is gaining energy. If one considers the energy of a system as being represented as a height on a vertical energy plot, the enthalpy change that accompanies the reaction can be diagrammed as in part (a) of Figure 4.9.1 Reaction Energy: the energy of the reactants has some energy, and the system increases its energy as it goes to products. The products are higher on the vertical scale than the reactants. Endothermic, then, implies that the system *gains*, or absorbs, energy.

An opposite situation exists for an exothermic process, as shown in part (b) of Figure 4.9.1 - Reaction Energy. If the enthalpy change of a reaction is negative, the system is losing energy, so the products have less energy than the reactants, and the products are lower on the vertical energy scale than the reactants are. Exothermic, then, implies that the system *loses*, or gives off, energy.

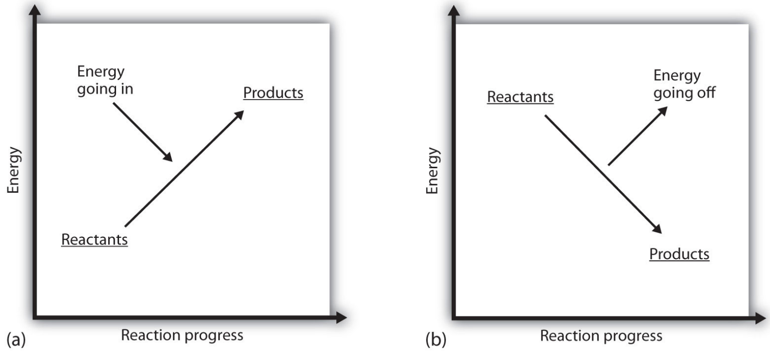


Figure 4.9.1 Reaction Energy (a) In an endothermic reaction, the energy of the system increases (i.e., moves higher on the vertical scale of energy). (b) In an exothermic reaction, the energy of the system decreases (i.e., moves lower on the vertical scale of energy).

✓ Example 4.9.2

Consider this thermochemical equation.

$$2\,\mathrm{CO(g)} + \mathrm{O_2(g)} \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{CO_2(g)}$$

with $\Delta H = -565$ kJ

Is it exothermic or endothermic? How much energy is given off or absorbed?

Solution

By definition, a chemical reaction that has a negative ΔH is exothermic, meaning that this much energy—in this case, 565 kJ—is given off by the reaction.

? Exercise 4.9.2

Consider this thermochemical equation.

$$\mathrm{CO_2(g)} + \mathrm{H_2(g)} \rightarrow \mathrm{CO(g)} + \mathrm{H_2O(g)}\ \Delta H = 42\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Is it exothermic or endothermic? How much energy is given off or absorbed?

Answer

Endothermic; 42 kJ are absorbed.

How are ΔH values measured experimentally? Actually, ΔH is not measured; q is measured. But the measurements are performed under conditions of constant pressure, so ΔH is equal to the q measured.

Experimentally, q is measured by taking advantage of the equation

$$q = mc\Delta T$$

We pre-measure the mass of the chemicals in a system. Then we let the chemical reaction occur and measure the change in temperature (ΔT) of the system. If we know the specific heat of the materials in the system (typically we do), we can calculate q. That value of q is numerically equal to the ΔH of the process, which we can scale up to a molar scale. The container in which the system resides is typically insulated, so any energy change goes into changing the temperature of the system, rather than being leaked from the system. The container is referred to as a **calorimeter**, and the process of measuring changes in enthalpy is called **calorimetry**.

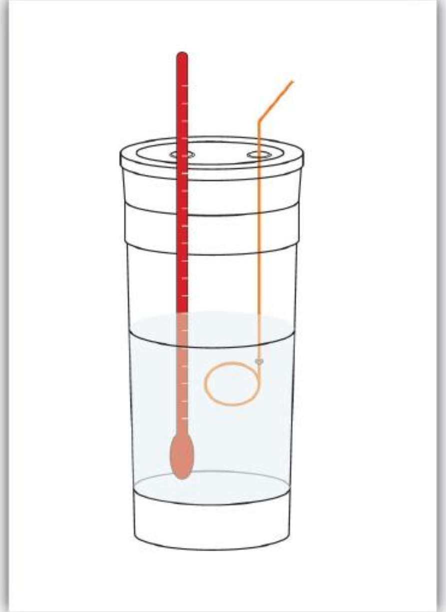


Figure 4.9.2 Calorimeters. A simple calorimeter can be constructed from some nested foam coffee cups, a cover, a thermometer, and a stirrer.

For example, suppose 4.0 g of NaOH, or 0.10 mol of NaOH, are dissolved to make 100.0 mL of aqueous solution; while 3.65 g of HCl, or 0.10 mol of HCl, are dissolved to make another 100.0 mL of aqueous solution. The two solutions are mixed in an insulated calorimeter, a thermometer is inserted, and the calorimeter is covered (See Figure 4.9.2 - Calorimeters for an example setup). The thermometer measures the temperature change as the following chemical reaction occurs:

$$NaOH\ (aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(\ell)$$

An observer notes that the temperature increases from 22.4°C to 29.1°C. Assuming that the heat capacities and densities of the solutions are the same as those of pure water, we now have the information we need to determine the enthalpy change of the chemical reaction. The total amount of solution is 200.0 mL, and with a density of 1.00 g/mL, we thus have 200.0 g of solution. Using the equation for q, we substitute for our experimental measurements and the specific heat of water (in Table 4.9.1 of Section 7.3).

$$q = (200.0\ \cancel{g})(4.184 \frac{J}{\cancel{g}\cdot\ {}^{\circ}\cancel{C}})(6.7\ {}^{\circ}\cancel{C})$$

Solving for q, we get

$$q = 5600\ J \equiv \Delta H\ for\ the\ reaction$$

The heat q is equal to the ΔH for the reaction because the chemical reaction occurs at constant pressure. However, the reaction is giving off this amount of energy, so the actual sign on ΔH is negative:

$$\Delta H = -5{,}600\ \text{J for the reaction}$$

Thus, we have the following thermochemical equation for the chemical reaction that occurred in the calorimeter:

$$\frac{1}{10} NaOH(aq) + \frac{1}{10} HCl(aq) \rightarrow \frac{1}{10} NaCl(aq) + \frac{1}{10} H_2O(l)\ \Delta H = -5600\ J$$

The 1/10 coefficients are present to remind us that we started with one-tenth of a mole of each reactant, so we make one-tenth of a mole of each product. Typically, however, we report thermochemical equations in terms of moles, not one-tenth of a mole. To scale up to molar quantities, we must multiply the coefficients by 10. However, when we do this, we get 10 times as much energy. Thus, we have

$$NaOH\ (aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(\ell)\ \Delta H = -56{,}000\ J$$

The Δ*H* can be converted into kJ units, so our final thermochemical equation is

$$NaOH\ (aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow NaCl(aq) + H_2O(\ell)\ \Delta H = -56\ kJ$$

We have just taken our experimental data from calorimetry and determined the enthalpy change of a chemical reaction. Similar measurements on other chemical reactions can determine the Δ*H* values of any chemical reaction you want to study.

✓ Example 4.9.3

A 100 mL solution of 0.25 mol of Ca^{2+}(aq) was mixed with 0.50 mol of F^-(aq) ions, and CaF_2 was precipitated:

$$Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2F^-(aq) \rightarrow CaF_2(s)$$

The temperature of the solution increased by 10.5°C. What was the enthalpy change for the chemical reaction? What was the enthalpy change for the production of 1 mol of CaF_2? Assume that the solution has the same density and specific heat as water.

Solution

Because we are given Δ*T* directly, we can determine the heat of the reaction, which is equal to Δ*H*:

$$q = (100\ \cancel{g})(4.184 \frac{J}{\cancel{g} \cdot \cancel{^\circ C}})(10.5\ \cancel{^\circ C})$$

Solving for *q*, we get

$$q = 4{,}400\ J$$

Therefore, $\Delta H = -4{,}400$ J.

According to the stoichiometry of the reaction, exactly 0.25 mol of CaF_2 will form, so this quantity of heat is for 0.25 mol. For 1 mol of CaF_2, we need to scale up the heat by a factor of four:

$$q = 4{,}400\ J \times 4 = 17{,}600\ J \text{ for 1 mol } CaF_2$$

On a molar basis, the change in enthalpy is

$$\Delta H = -17{,}600\ J = -17.6\ kJ$$

? Exercise 4.9.3

In a calorimeter at constant pressure, 0.10 mol of CH_4(g) and 0.20 mol of O_2(g) are reacted.

$$CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(\ell)$$

The reaction warms 750.0 g of H_2O by 28.4°C. What is Δ*H* for the reaction on a molar scale?

Answer

−891 kJ

Key Takeaways

- Every chemical reaction occurs with a concurrent change in energy.
- The change in enthalpy equals heat at constant pressure.
- Enthalpy changes can be expressed by using thermochemical equations.
- Enthalpy changes are measured by using calorimetry.

4.10: Intermolecular Forces

Learning Objective

- Relate phase to intermolecular forces.

Why does a substance have the phase that it does? The preferred phase of a substance at a given set of conditions is a balance between the energy of the particles and intermolecular forces (or intermolecular interactions) between the particles. If the forces between particles are strong enough, the substance is a liquid or, if stronger, a solid. If the forces between particles are weak and sufficient energy is present, the particles separate from each other, so the gas phase is the preferred phase. The energy of the particles is mostly determined by temperature, so temperature is the main variable that determines what phase is stable at any given point.

What forces define intermolecular interactions? There are several. A force present in all substances with electrons is the **dispersion force** (sometimes called the *London dispersion force*, after the physicist Fritz London, who first described this force in the early 1900s). This interaction is caused by the instantaneous position of an electron in a molecule, which temporarily makes that point of the molecule negatively charged and the rest of the molecule positively charged. In an instant, the electron is now somewhere else, but the fleeting imbalance of electric charge in the molecule allows molecules to interact with each other. As you might expect, the greater the number of electrons in a species, the stronger the dispersion force; this partially explains why smaller molecules are gases and larger molecules are liquids and solids at the same temperature. (Mass is a factor as well.)

Molecules with a permanent dipole moment experience **dipole-dipole interactions,** which are generally stronger than dispersion forces if all other things are equal. The oppositely charged ends of a polar molecule, which have partial charges on them, attract each other (Figure $4.10.1$). Thus, a polar molecule such as CH_2Cl_2 has a significantly higher boiling point (313 K, or 40°C) than a nonpolar molecule like CF_4 (145 K, or −128°C), even though it has a lower molar mass (85 g/mol vs. 88 g/mol).

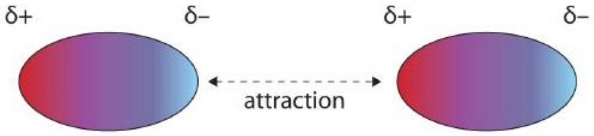


Figure 4.10.1: Dipole-Dipole Interactions. Oppositely charged ends of polar molecules attract each other.
2 ovals with partial positive left & right sides are attracted to each other. The right of oval 1 is attracted to the left of oval 2.

An unusually strong form of dipole-dipole interaction is called **hydrogen bonding**. Hydrogen bonding is found in molecules with an H atom bonded to an N atom, an O atom, or an F atom. Such covalent bonds are very polar, and the dipole-dipole interaction between these bonds in two or more molecules is strong enough to create a new category of intermolecular force. Hydrogen bonding is the reason water has unusual properties. For such a small molecule (its molar mass is only 18 g/mol), H_2O has relatively high melting and boiling points. Its boiling point is 373 K (100°C), while the boiling point of a similar molecule, H_2S, is 233 K (−60°C). This is because H_2O molecules experience hydrogen bonding, while H_2S molecules do not. This strong attraction between H_2O molecules requires additional energy to separate the molecules in the condensed phase, so its boiling point is higher than would be expected. Hydrogen bonding is also responsible for water's ability as a solvent, its high heat capacity, and its ability to expand when freezing; the molecules line up in such a way that there is extra space between the molecules, increasing its volume in the solid state (Figure $4.10.2$).

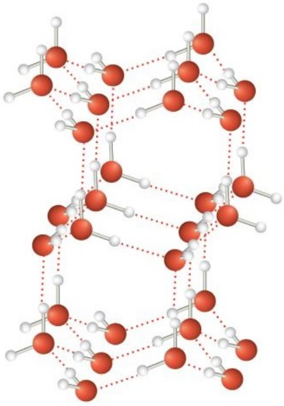


Figure 4.10.2: Hydrogen Bonding. When water solidifies, hydrogen bonding between the molecules forces the molecules to line up in a way that creates empty space between the molecules, increasing the overall volume of the solid. This is why ice is less dense than liquid water.

✓ Example 4.10.1

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. C_3H_8
b. CH_3OH
c. H_2S

Solution

1. Although C–H bonds are polar, they are only minimally polar. The most significant intermolecular force for this substance would be dispersion forces.
2. This molecule has an H atom bonded to an O atom, so it will experience hydrogen bonding.
3. Although this molecule does not experience hydrogen bonding, the Lewis electron dot diagram and VSEPR indicate that it is bent, so it has a permanent dipole. The most significant force in this substance is dipole-dipole interaction.

? Exercise 4.10.1

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. HF
b. HCl

Answers

a. hydrogen bonding
b. dipole-dipole interactions

The preferred phase a substance adopts can change with temperature. At low temperatures, most substances are solids (only helium is predicted to be a liquid at absolute zero). As the temperature increases, those substances with very weak intermolecular forces become gases directly (in a process called *sublimation*, which will be discussed in Section 10.3). Substances with weak interactions can become liquids as the temperature increases. As the temperature increases even more, the individual particles will have so much energy that the intermolecular forces are overcome, so the particles separate from each other, and the substance becomes a gas (assuming that their chemical bonds are not so weak that the compound decomposes from the high temperature). Although it is difficult to predict the temperature ranges for which solid, liquid, or gas is the preferred phase for any random substance, all substances progress from solid to liquid to gas (in that order) as temperature increases.

Summary

- All substances experience dispersion forces between their particles.
- Substances that are polar experience dipole-dipole interactions.
- Substances with covalent bonds between an H atom and N, O, or F atoms experience hydrogen bonding.

- The preferred phase of a substance depends on the strength of the intermolecular force and the energy of the particles.

4.11: Phase Transitions - Melting, Boiling, and Subliming

Learning Objective

- Describe what happens during a phase change.
- Calculate the energy change needed for a phase change.

Substances can change phase—often because of a temperature change. At low temperatures, most substances are solid; as the temperature increases, they become liquid; at higher temperatures still, they become gaseous.

The process of a solid becoming a liquid is called **melting** (an older term that you may see sometimes is *fusion*). The opposite process, a liquid becoming a solid, is called **solidification**. For any pure substance, the temperature at which melting occurs—known as the **melting point**—is a characteristic of that substance. It requires energy for a solid to melt into a liquid. Every pure substance has a certain amount of energy it needs to change from a solid to a liquid. This amount is called the **enthalpy of fusion (or heat of fusion)** of the substance, represented as ΔH_{fus}. Some ΔH_{fus} values are listed in Table 4.11.1; it is assumed that these values are for the melting point of the substance. Note that the unit of ΔH_{fus} is kilojoules per mole, so we need to know the quantity of material to know how much energy is involved. The ΔH_{fus} is always tabulated as a positive number. However, it can be used for both the melting and the solidification processes, minding that melting is always endothermic (so ΔH will be positive), while solidification is always exothermic (so ΔH will be negative).

Table 4.11.1: Enthalpies of Fusion for Various Substances

Substance (Melting Point)	ΔH_{fus} (kJ/mol)
Water (0°C)	6.01
Aluminum (660°C)	10.7
Benzene (5.5°C)	9.95
Ethanol (−114.3°C)	5.02
Mercury (−38.8°C)	2.29

Example 4.11.1

What is the energy change when 45.7 g of H_2O melt at 0°C?

Solution

The ΔH_{fus} of H_2O is 6.01 kJ/mol. However, our quantity is given in units of grams, not moles, so the first step is to convert grams to moles using the molar mass of H_2O, which is 18.0 g/mol. Then we can use ΔH_{fus} as a conversion factor. Because the substance is melting, the process is endothermic, so the energy change will have a positive sign.

$$45.7\ g\ \cancel{H_2O} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{H_2O}}{18.0\ \cancel{g}} \times \frac{6.01 kJ}{\cancel{mol}} = 15.3\ kJ$$

Without a sign, the number is assumed to be positive.

Exercise 4.11.1

What is the energy change when 108 g of C_6H_6 freeze at 5.5°C?

Answer

−13.8 kJ

During melting, energy goes exclusively to changing the phase of a substance; it does not go into changing the temperature of a substance. Hence melting is an **isothermal** process because a substance stays at the same temperature. Only when all of a substance is melted does additional energy go to changing its temperature.

What happens when a solid becomes a liquid? In a solid, individual particles are stuck in place because the intermolecular forces cannot be overcome by the energy of the particles. When more energy is supplied (e.g., by raising the temperature), there comes a point at which the particles have enough energy to move around, but not enough energy to separate. This is the liquid phase: particles are still in contact, but are able to move around each other. This explains why liquids can assume the shape of their containers: the particles move around and, under the influence of gravity, fill the lowest volume possible (unless the liquid is in a zero-gravity environment—see Figure 4.11.1.

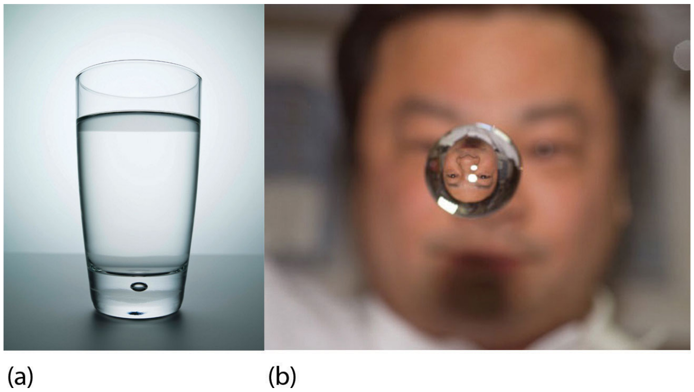


Figure 4.11.1: Liquids and Gravity. (a) A liquid fills the bottom of its container as it is drawn downward by gravity and the particles slide over each other. (b) A liquid floats in a zero-gravity environment. The particles still slide over each other because they are in the liquid phase, but now there is no gravity to pull them down. Source: Photo on the left © Thinkstock. Photo on the right courtesy of NASA, http://www.nasa.gov/mission_pages/st...image_009.html.

The phase change between a liquid and a gas has some similarities to the phase change between a solid and a liquid. At a certain temperature, the particles in a liquid have enough energy to become a gas. The process of a liquid becoming a gas is called **boiling (or vaporization)**, while the process of a gas becoming a liquid is called **condensation**. However, unlike the solid/liquid conversion process, the liquid/gas conversion process is noticeably affected by the surrounding pressure on the liquid because gases are strongly affected by pressure. This means that the temperature at which a liquid becomes a gas, the **boiling point**, can change with surrounding pressure. Therefore, we define the **normal boiling point** as the temperature at which a liquid changes to a gas when the surrounding pressure is exactly 1 atm, or 760 torr. Unless otherwise specified, it is assumed that a boiling point is for 1 atm of pressure.

Like the solid/liquid phase change, the liquid/gas phase change involves energy. The amount of energy required to convert a liquid to a gas is called the **enthalpy of vaporization** (or heat of vaporization), represented as ΔH_{vap}. Some ΔH_{vap} values are listed in Table 4.11.2; it is assumed that these values are for the normal boiling point temperature of the substance, which is also given in the table. The unit for ΔH_{vap} is also kilojoules per mole, so we need to know the quantity of material to know how much energy is involved. The ΔH_{vap} is also always tabulated as a positive number. It can be used for both the boiling and the condensation processes as long as you keep in mind that boiling is always endothermic (so ΔH will be positive), while condensation is always exothermic (so ΔH will be negative).

Table 4.11.1: Enthalpies of Vaporization for Various Substances

Substance (Normal Boiling Point)	ΔH_{vap} (kJ/mol)
Water (100°C)	40.68
Bromine (59.5°C)	15.4
Benzene (80.1°C)	30.8
Ethanol (78.3°C)	38.6
Mercury (357°C)	59.23

✓ Example 4.11.2

What is the energy change when 66.7 g of $Br_2(g)$ condense to a liquid at 59.5°C?

Solution

The ΔH_{vap} of Br_2 is 15.4 kJ/mol. Even though this is a condensation process, we can still use the numerical value of ΔH_{vap} as long as we realize that we must take energy out, so the ΔH value will be negative. To determine the magnitude of the energy change, we must first convert the amount of Br_2 to moles. Then we can use ΔH_{vap} as a conversion factor.

$$66.7\ g\ \cancel{Br_2} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Br_2}}{159.8\ \cancel{g}} \times \frac{15.4 kJ}{\cancel{mol}} = 6.43\ kJ$$

Because the process is exothermic, the actual value will be negative: $\Delta H = -6.43$ kJ.

Exercise 4.11.2

What is the energy change when 822 g of $C_2H_5OH(\ell)$ boil at its normal boiling point of 78.3°C?

Answer

689 kJ

As with melting, the energy in boiling goes exclusively to changing the phase of a substance; it does not go into changing the temperature of a substance. So boiling is also an isothermal process. Only when all of a substance has boiled does any additional energy go to changing its temperature.

What happens when a liquid becomes a gas? We have already established that a liquid is composed of particles in contact with each other. When a liquid becomes a gas, the particles separate from each other, with each particle going its own way in space. This is how gases tend to fill their containers. Indeed, in the gas phase most of the volume is empty space; only about 1/1,000th of the volume is actually taken up by matter (Figure 4.11.1). It is this property of gases that explains why they can be compressed, a fact that is considered in Chapter 6.

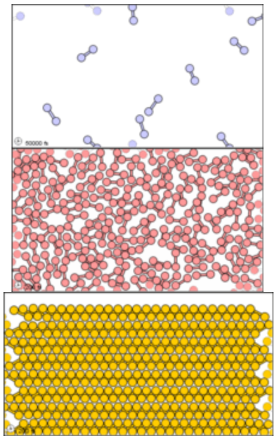


Figure 4.11.2: Sub-microscopic view of the diatomic molecules of the element bromine (a) in the gaseous state (above 58°C); (b) in liquid form (between -7.2 and 58.8°C); and (c) in solid form (below -7.2°C). As a solid, the molecules are fixed, but fluctuate. As a liquid, the molecules are in contact but are also able to move around each other. As a gas, most of the volume is actually empty space. The particles are not to scale; in reality, the dots representing the particles would be about 1/100th of the size depicted.

Under some circumstances, the solid phase can transition directly to the gas phase without going through a liquid phase, and a gas can directly become a solid. The solid-to-gas change is called **sublimation**, while the reverse process is called **deposition.** Sublimation is isothermal, like the other phase changes. There is a measurable energy change during sublimation—this energy change is called the **enthalpy of sublimation**, represented as ΔH_{sub}. The relationship between the ΔH_{sub} and the other enthalpy changes is as follows:

$$\Delta H_{sub} = \Delta H_{fus} + \Delta H_{vap}$$

As such, ΔH_{sub} is not always tabulated because it can be simply calculated from ΔH_{fus} and ΔH_{vap}.

There are several common examples of sublimation. A well-known product, dry ice, is actually solid CO_2. Dry ice is dry because it sublimes, with the solid bypassing the liquid phase and going straight to the gas phase. The sublimation occurs at temperature of −77°C, so it must be handled with caution. If you have ever noticed that ice cubes in a freezer tend to get smaller over time, it is because the solid water is very slowly subliming. "Freezer burn" isn't actually a burn; it occurs when certain foods, such as meats, slowly lose solid water content because of sublimation. The food is still good, but looks unappetizing. Reducing the temperature of a freezer will slow the sublimation of solid water.

Figure 4.11.3: Freezer burn on a piece of beef. (Public Domain; RolloM.)

Chemical equations can be used to represent a phase change. In such cases, it is crucial to use phase labels on the substances. For example, the chemical equation for the melting of ice to make liquid water is as follows:

$$H_2O(s) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell)$$

No chemical change is taking place; however, a physical change is taking place.

Summary

- Phase changes can occur between any two phases of matter.
- All phase changes occur with a simultaneous change in energy.
- All phase changes are isothermal.

- **10.3: Phase Transitions - Melting, Boiling, and Subliming** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

4.12: Prelude to Solutions

More than 70% of the earth's surface is covered by a very important solution—seawater. It is likely that without seawater, no life would exist on Earth.

At its simplest, seawater is mostly H_2O. However, about 3.5% of seawater is dissolved solids—mostly NaCl—but other ions as well. Table $4.12.1$ lists the percentage by mass of the various ions in seawater. Because it is highly likely that life on Earth originated in the oceans, it should not be surprising that many bodily fluids resemble seawater, especially blood. Table $4.12.1$ also lists the percentage by mass of ions in a typical sample of blood.

Table 4.12.1: Percentage by Mass of Ions in Seawater and Blood

Ion	Percentage in Seawater	Percentage in Blood
Na^+	2.36	0.322
Cl^-	1.94	0.366
Mg^{2+}	0.13	0.002
SO_4^{2-}	0.09	-
K^+	0.04	0.016
Ca^{2+}	0.04	0.0096
HCO_3^-	0.002	0.165
HPO_4^{2-}, $H_2PO_4^-$	-	0.01

Most ions are more abundant in seawater than they are in blood, with some notable exceptions. There is far more hydrogen carbonate ion (HCO_3^-) in blood than in seawater; indeed, it is the third most common ion in blood. This difference is significant because the HCO_3^- ion and some related species [CO_3^{2-}, $CO_2(aq)$] have an important role in controlling the acid-base properties of blood. Although there is a negligible amount of the two hydrogen phosphate ions (HPO_4^{2-} and $H_2PO_4^-$) in seawater, there is a small amount in blood, where these ions affect acid-base properties. Another notable difference is that blood has a negligible amount of the sulfate ion (SO_4^{2-}), but this ion is present in seawater. Gold is present in seawater—but only a tiny amount. A current estimate of the amount of gold is about 1 part per every 1×10^{13} parts of seawater, which makes the extraction of gold from seawater unfeasible. However, it does mean that there are about 1.4×10^{14} g of gold in the world's oceans!

Figure 4.12.1: Gold in the Ocean. There are approximately 1.4×10^{14} g of gold in the oceans, but extracting it effectively is beyond current technologies. (CC SA-BY; Evgeni Dinev, Flickr.)

A solution is a *homogeneous mixture*: a mixture of two or more substances that are so intimately mixed that the mixture behaves in many ways like a single substance. Many chemical reactions occur when the reactants are dissolved in solution. In this chapter, we will introduce concepts that are applicable to solutions and the chemical reactions that occur in them.

4.13: Definitions

Learning Objective

- Learn some terminology involving solutions.
- Recognize which terminology is qualitative and which terminology is quantitative.
- Explain why certain substances dissolve in other substances.

The major component of a solution is called the **solvent.** The minor component of a solution is called the **solute**. "Major" and "minor" indicate which component has the greater or lesser presence by mass or moles, respectively. Sometimes this becomes confusing, especially when considering substances with very different molar masses. We will confine the discussion here to solutions for which the major component and the minor component are obvious.

Solutions exist for every possible phase of the solute and the solvent. Salt water, for example, is a solution of solid NaCl in liquid water; soda water is a solution of gaseous CO_2 in liquid water, while air is a solution of a gaseous solute (O_2) in a gaseous solvent (N_2). In all cases, however, the overall phase of the solution is the same phase as the solvent.

Example 4.13.1: Sugar Water

A solution is made by dissolving 1.00 g of sucrose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) in 100.0 g of liquid water. Identify the solvent and solute in the resulting solution.

Solution

Either by mass or by moles, the obvious minor component is sucrose, so it is the solute. Water—the majority component—is the solvent. The fact that the resulting solution is the same phase as water also suggests that water is the solvent.

Exercise 4.13.1

A solution is made by dissolving 3.33 g of HCl(g) in 40.0 g of liquid methyl alcohol (CH_3OH). Identify the solvent and solute in the resulting solution.

Answer

solute: HCl(g); solvent: CH_3OH

One important concept of solutions is in defining how much solute is dissolved in a given amount of solvent. This concept is called **concentration**. Various words are used to describe the relative amounts of solute. **Dilute** describes a solution that has very little solute, while **concentrated** describes a solution that has a lot of solute. One problem is that these terms are qualitative; they describe more or less but not exactly how much.

In most cases, only a certain maximum amount of solute can be dissolved in a given amount of solvent. This maximum amount is called the **solubility** of the solute. It is usually expressed in terms of the amount of solute that can dissolve in 100 g of the solvent at a given temperature. Table 4.13.1 lists the solubilities of some simple ionic compounds. These solubilities vary widely: NaCl can dissolve up to 31.6 g per 100 g of H_2O, while AgCl can dissolve only 0.00019 g per 100 g of H_2O.

Table 4.13.1: Solubilities of Some Ionic Compounds

Solute	Solubility (g per 100 g of H_2O at 25°C)
AgCl	0.00019
$CaCO_3$	0.0006
KBr	70.7
NaCl	36.1
$NaNO_3$	94.6

When the maximum amount of solute has been dissolved in a given amount of solvent, we say that the solution is **saturated** with solute. When less than the maximum amount of solute is dissolved in a given amount of solute, the solution is **unsaturated**. These terms are also qualitative terms because each solute has its own solubility. A solution of 0.00019 g of AgCl per 100 g of H_2O may be saturated, but with so little solute dissolved, it is also rather dilute. A solution of 36.1 g of NaCl in 100 g of H_2O is also saturated but rather concentrated. Ideally, we need more precise ways of specifying the amount of solute in a solution. We will introduce such ways in Section 11.3.

In some circumstances, it is possible to dissolve more than the maximum amount of a solute in a solution. Usually, this happens by heating the solvent, dissolving more solute than would normally dissolve at regular temperatures, and letting the solution cool down slowly and carefully. Such solutions are called **supersaturated** solutions and are not stable; given an opportunity (such as dropping a crystal of solute in the solution), the excess solute will precipitate from the solution.

It should be obvious that some solutes dissolve in certain solvents but not others. NaCl, for example, dissolves in water but not in vegetable oil. Beeswax dissolves in liquid hexane but not water. What is it that makes a solute soluble in some solvents but not others?

The answer is intermolecular interactions. The intermolecular interactions include London dispersion forces, dipole-dipole interactions, and hydrogen bonding (as described in Chapter 10). From experimental studies, it has been determined that if molecules of a solute experience the same intermolecular forces that the solvent does, the solute will likely dissolve in that solvent. So, NaCl—a very polar substance because it is composed of ions—dissolves in water, which is very polar, but not in oil, which is generally nonpolar. Nonpolar wax dissolves in nonpolar hexane but not in polar water. This concept leads to the general rule that "like dissolves like" for predicting whether a solute is soluble in a given solvent. However, this is a general rule, not an absolute statement, so it must be applied with care.

✓ Example 4.13.2: Polar and Nonpolar Solvents

Would I_2 be more soluble in CCl_4 or H_2O? Explain your answer.

Solution

I_2 is nonpolar. Of the two solvents, CCl_4 is nonpolar and H_2O is polar, so I_2 would be expected to be more soluble in CCl_4.

? Exercise 4.13.2

Would C_3H_7OH be more soluble in CCl_4 or H_2O? Explain your answer.

Answer

H_2O because both experience hydrogen bonding

Summary

- Solutions are composed of a solvent (major component) and a solute (minor component).
- Concentration is the expression of the amount of solute in a given amount of solvent and can be described by several qualitative terms.
- Solubility is a specific amount of solute that can dissolve in a given amount of solvent.
- "Like dissolves like" is a useful rule for deciding if a solute will be soluble in a solvent.

4.14: Quantitative Units of Concentration

Learning Objective

- Learn to determine specific concentrations with several common units.

Rather than qualitative terms (Section 11.2 - Definitions), we need quantitative ways to express the amount of solute in a solution; that is, we need specific units of concentration. In this section, we will introduce several common and useful units of concentration.

Molarity (M) is defined as the number of moles of solute divided by the number of liters of solution:

$$molarity\ =\frac{moles\ of\ solute}{liters\ of\ solution}$$

which can be simplified as

$$M\ =\frac{mol}{L},\ or\ mol/L$$

As with any mathematical equation, if you know any two quantities, you can calculate the third, unknown, quantity.

For example, suppose you have 0.500 L of solution that has 0.24 mol of NaOH dissolved in it. The concentration of the solution can be calculated as follows:

$$molarity\ =\frac{0.24\,mol\ NaOH}{0.500L}=0.48\,M\ NaOH$$

The concentration of the solution is 0.48 M, which is spoken as "zero point forty-eight molarity" or "zero point forty-eight molar." If the quantity of the solute is given in mass units, you must convert mass units to mole units before using the definition of molarity to calculate concentration. For example, what is the molar concentration of a solution of 22.4 g of HCl dissolved in 1.56 L? First, convert the mass of solute to moles using the molar mass of HCl (36.5 g/mol):

$$22.4\ g\cancel{HCl}\times\frac{1\ mol\ Hcl}{36.5\ g\cancel{HCl}}=0.614\,M\ HCl$$

Now we can use the definition of molarity to determine a concentration:

$$M\ =\frac{0.614\,mol\ HCl}{1.56L}=0.394\,M$$

Example 4.14.1

What is the molarity of a solution made when 32.7 g of NaOH are dissolved to make 445 mL of solution?

Solution

To use the definition of molarity, both quantities must be converted to the proper units. First, convert the volume units from milliliters to liters:

$$445\ m\cancel{L}\times\frac{1\ L}{1000\ m\cancel{L}}=0.445\ L$$

Now we convert the amount of solute to moles, using the molar mass of NaOH, which is 40.0 g/mol:

$$32.7\ gNa\cancel{OH}\times\frac{1\ mol\ NaOH}{40.0\ gNa\cancel{OH}}=0.818\,mol\ NaOH$$

Now we can use the definition of molarity to determine the molar concentration:

$$M\ =\frac{0.818\,mol\ NaOH}{0.445L}=1.84\,M\ NaOH$$

? Exercise 4.14.1

What is the molarity of a solution made when 66.2 g of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ are dissolved to make 235 mL of solution?

Answer

1.57 M

The definition of molarity can be used to determine the amount of solute or the volume of solution, if the other information is given. Example 4 illustrates this situation.

✓ Example 4.14.2

How many moles of solute are present in 0.108 L of a 0.887 M NaCl solution?

Solution

We know the volume and the molarity; we can use the definition of molarity to mathematically solve for the amount in moles. Substituting the quantities into the definition of molarity:

$$0.887\,M = \frac{mol\ NaCl}{0.108 L}$$

We multiply the 0.108 L over to the other side of the equation and multiply the units together; "molarity × liters" equals moles, according to the definition of molarity. So

mol NaCl = (0.887 M)(0.108 L) = 0.0958 mol

? Exercise 4.14.2

How many moles of solute are present in 225 mL of a 1.44 M $CaCl_2$ solution?

Answer

0.324 mol

If you need to determine volume, remember the rule that the unknown quantity must be by itself and in the numerator to determine the correct answer. Thus, rearrangement of the definition of molarity is required.

✓ Example 4.14.3

What volume of a 2.33 M $NaNO_3$ solution is needed to obtain 0.222 mol of solute?

Solution

Using the definition of molarity, we have

$$2.33\,M = \frac{0.222 mol}{L}$$

To solve for the number of liters, we bring the 2.33 M over to the right into the denominator, and the number of liters over to the left in the numerator. We now have

$$L = \frac{0.222 mol}{2.33\,M}$$

Dividing, **the volume is 0.0953 L = 95.3 mL.**

Exercise 4.14.3

What volume of a 0.570 M K_2SO_4 solution is needed to obtain 0.872 mol of solute?

Answer

1.53 L

A similar unit of concentration is **molality** (*m*), which is defined as the number of moles of solute per kilogram of solvent, not per liter of solution:

$$molality = \frac{moles\ solute}{kilograms\ solvent}$$

Mathematical manipulation of molality is the same as with molarity.

Another way to specify an amount is **percentage composition by mass** (or *mass percentage*, % m/m). It is defined as follows:

$$\%m/m = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{mass\ of\ entire\ sample} \times 100\%$$

It is not uncommon to see this unit used on commercial products (see Figure 4.14.1- Concentration in Commercial Applications).

Figure 4.14.1 Concentration in Commercial Applications © Thinkstock. *The percentage of urea in this package is 5% m/m, meaning that there are 5 g of urea per 100 g of product.*

Example 4.14.4

What is the mass percentage of Fe in a piece of metal with 87.9 g of Fe in a 113 g sample?

Solution

Using the definition of mass percentage, we have

$$\%m/m = \frac{87.9\,g\,Fe}{113\,g\,sample} \times 100\% = 77.8\%\,Fe$$

? Exercise 4.14.4

What is the mass percentage of H_2O_2 in a solution with 1.67 g of H_2O_2 in a 55.5 g sample?

Answer

3.01%

Related concentration units are **parts per thousand (ppth), parts per million (ppm)** and **parts per billion (ppb).** Parts per thousand is defined as follows:

$$ppth = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{mass\ of\ sample} \times 1000$$

There are similar definitions for parts per million and parts per billion:

$$ppm = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{mass\ of\ sample} \times 1,000,000$$

and

$$ppb = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{mass\ of\ sample} \times 1,000,000,000$$

Each unit is used for progressively lower and lower concentrations. The two masses must be expressed in the same unit of mass, so conversions may be necessary.

✓ Example 4.14.5

If there are 0.6 g of Pb present in 277 g of solution, what is the Pb concentration in parts per thousand?

Solution

Use the definition of parts per thousand to determine the concentration. Substituting

$$\frac{0.6 g\, Pb}{277 g\, solution} \times 1000 = 2.17\, ppth$$

? Exercise 4.14.5

If there are 0.551 mg of As in 348 g of solution, what is the As concentration in ppm?

Answer

1.58 ppm

As with molarity and molality, algebraic rearrangements may be necessary to answer certain questions.

✓ Example 4.14.6

The concentration of Cl^- ion in a sample of H_2O is 15.0 ppm. What mass of Cl^- ion is present in 240.0 mL of H_2O, which has a density of 1.00 g/mL?

Solution

First, use the density of H_2O to determine the mass of the sample:

$$240.0\ \cancel{mL} \times \frac{1.00\ g}{\cancel{mL}} = 240.0\ g$$

Now we can use the definition of ppm:

$$15.0\,ppm\ = \frac{mass\ of\ solute}{240.0\ g\ solution} \times 1,000,000$$

Rearranging to solve for the mass of solute,

$$mass\ solute = \frac{(15.0\,ppm)(240.0\ g\ solution)}{1,000,000} = 0.0036g = 3.6\,mg$$

? Exercise 4.14.6

The concentration of Fe^{3+} ion in a sample of H_2O is 335.0 ppm. What mass of Fe^{3+} ion is present in 3,450 mL of H_2O, which has a density of 1.00 g/mL?

Answer

1.16 g

For ionic solutions, we need to differentiate between the concentration of the salt versus the concentration of each individual ion. Because the ions in ionic compounds go their own way when a compound is dissolved in a solution, the resulting concentration of the ion may be different from the concentration of the complete salt. For example, if 1 M NaCl were prepared, the solution could also be described as a solution of 1 M Na^+(aq) and 1 M Cl^-(aq) because there is one Na^+ ion and one Cl^- ion per formula unit of the salt. However, if the solution were 1 M $CaCl_2$, there are two Cl^-(aq) ions for every formula unit dissolved, so the concentration of Cl^-(aq) would be 2 M, not 1 M.

In addition, the total ion concentration is the sum of the individual ion concentrations. Thus for the 1 M NaCl, the total ion concentration is 2 M; for the 1 M $CaCl_2$, the total ion concentration is 3 M.

Key Takeaway

- Quantitative units of concentration include molarity, molality, mass percentage, parts per thousand (ppth), parts per million (ppm), and parts per billion (ppb).

4.15: Dilutions and Concentrations

Learning Objective

- Learn how to dilute and concentrate solutions.

Often, a worker will need to change the concentration of a solution by changing the amount of solvent. **Dilution** is the addition of solvent, which decreases the concentration of the solute in the solution. **Concentration** is the removal of solvent, which increases the concentration of the solute in the solution. (Do not confuse the two uses of the word *concentration* here!)

In both dilution and concentration, the amount of solute stays the same. This gives us a way to calculate what the new solution volume must be for the desired concentration of solute. From the definition of molarity,

$$\text{molarity} = \frac{\text{moles of solute}}{\text{liters of solution}}$$

we can solve for the number of moles of solute:

moles of solute = (molarity)(liters of solution)

A simpler way of writing this is to use M to represent molarity and V to represent volume. So the equation becomes

moles of solute = MV

Because this quantity does not change before and after the change in concentration, the product MV must be the same before and after the concentration change. Using numbers to represent the initial and final conditions, we have

$$M_1V_1 = M_2V_2$$

as the **dilution equation**. The volumes must be expressed in the same units. Note that this equation gives only the initial and final conditions, not the amount of the change. The amount of change is determined by subtraction.

Example 4.15.1

If 25.0 mL of a 2.19 M solution are diluted to 72.8 mL, what is the final concentration?

Solution

It does not matter which set of conditions is labeled 1 or 2, as long as the conditions are paired together properly. Using the dilution equation, we have

$$(2.19\text{ M})(25.0\text{ mL}) = M_2(72.8\text{ mL})$$

Solving for the second concentration (noting that the milliliter units cancel),

$$M_2 = 0.752\text{ M}$$

The concentration of the solution has decreased. In going from 25.0 mL to 72.8 mL, 72.8 − 25.0 = 47.8 mL of solvent must be added.

Exercise 4.15.1

A 0.885 M solution of KBr whose initial volume is 76.5 mL has more water added until its concentration is 0.500 M. What is the new volume of the solution?

Answer

135.4 mL

Concentrating solutions involves removing solvent. Usually this is done by evaporating or boiling, assuming that the heat of boiling does not affect the solute. The dilution equation is used in these circumstances as well.

Chemistry is Everywhere: Preparing IV Solutions

In a hospital emergency room, a physician orders an intravenous (IV) delivery of 100 mL of 0.5% KCl for a patient suffering from hypokalemia (low potassium levels). Does an aide run to a supply cabinet and take out an IV bag containing this concentration of KCl?

Not likely. It is more probable that the aide must make the proper solution from an IV bag of sterile solution and a more concentrated, sterile solution, called a *stock solution*, of KCl. The aide is expected to use a syringe to draw up some stock solution and inject it into the waiting IV bag and dilute it to the proper concentration. Thus the aide must perform a dilution calculation.

Figure 4.15.1 Preparing IV Solution © Thinkstock. Medical personnel commonly must perform dilutions for IV solutions.

If the stock solution is 10.0% KCl and the final volume and concentration need to be 100 mL and 0.50%, respectively, then it is easy to calculate how much stock solution to use:

$$(10\%)V_1 = (0.50\%)(100\ \text{mL})V_1 = 5\ \text{mL}$$

Of course, the addition of the stock solution affects the total volume of the diluted solution, but the final concentration is likely close enough even for medical purposes.

Medical and pharmaceutical personnel are constantly dealing with dosages that require concentration measurements and dilutions. It is an important responsibility: calculating the *wrong* dose can be useless, harmful, or even fatal!

Summary

- Molarity and volume are used to determine dilutions and concentrations of solutions.

- **11.4: Dilutions and Concentrations** by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

4.16: Concentrations as Conversion Factors

Learning Objective

- Apply concentration units as conversion factors.

Concentration can be a conversion factor between the amount of solute and the amount of solution or solvent (depending on the definition of the concentration unit). As such, concentrations can be useful in a variety of stoichiometry problems. In many cases, it is best to use the original definition of the concentration unit; it is that definition that provides the conversion factor.

A simple example of using a concentration unit as a conversion factor is one in which we use the definition of the concentration unit and rearrange; we can do the calculation again as a unit conversion, rather than as a definition. For example, suppose we ask how many moles of solute are present in 0.108 L of a 0.887 M NaCl solution. Because 0.887 M means 0.887 mol/L, we can use this second expression for the concentration as a conversion factor:

$$0.108\, L\, \cancel{NaCl} \times \frac{0.887\, mol\, NaCl}{L\, \cancel{NaCl}} = 0.0958\, mol\, NaCl$$

(There is an understood 1 in the denominator of the conversion factor.) If we used the definition approach, we get the same answer, but now we are using conversion factor skills. Like any other conversion factor that relates two different types of units, the reciprocal of the concentration can be also used as a conversion factor.

Example 4.16.1

Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters of 2.35 M $CuSO_4$ are needed to obtain 4.88 mol of $CuSO_4$?

Solution

This is a one-step conversion, but the concentration must be written as the reciprocal for the units to work out:

$$4.88\, mol\, \cancel{CuSO_4} \times \frac{1\, L}{2.35\, \cancel{mol}} = 2.08\, L\, of\, solution$$

Exercise 4.16.1

Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters of 0.0444 M CH_2O are needed to obtain 0.0773 mol of CH_2O?

Answer:

1.74 L

Of course, once quantities in moles are available, another conversion can give the mass of the substance, using molar mass as a conversion factor.

Example 4.16.2

What mass of solute is present in 0.765 L of 1.93 M NaOH?

Solution

This is a two-step conversion, first using concentration as a conversion factor to determine the number of moles and then the molar mass of NaOH (40.0 g/mol) to convert to mass:

$$0.765\, \cancel{L} \times \frac{1.93\, mol\, \cancel{NaOH}}{L\, \cancel{solution}} \times \frac{40.0 g\, NaOH}{1\, mol\, \cancel{NaOH}} = 59.1\, g\, NaOH$$

? Exercise 4.16.2

What mass of solute is present in 1.08 L of 0.0578 M H_2SO_4?

Answer

6.12 g

More complex stoichiometry problems using balanced chemical reactions can also use concentrations as conversion factors. For example, suppose the following equation represents a chemical reaction:

$$2\,AgNO_3(aq) + CaCl_2(aq) \rightarrow 2\,AgCl(s) + Ca(NO_3)_2(aq)$$

If we wanted to know what volume of 0.555 M $CaCl_2$ would react with 1.25 mol of $AgNO_3$, we first use the balanced chemical equation to determine the number of moles of $CaCl_2$ that would react and then use concentration to convert to liters of solution:

$$1.25\ mol\ \cancel{AgNO_3} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{CaCl_2}}{2\ mol\ \cancel{AgNO_3}} \times \frac{1 L\ solution}{0.555\ mol\ \cancel{CaCl_2}} = 1.13\ L\ CaCl_2$$

This can be extended by starting with the mass of one reactant, instead of moles of a reactant.

✓ Example 4.16.3

What volume of 0.0995 M $Al(NO3)3$ will react with 3.66 g of Ag according to the following chemical equation?

$$3\,Ag(s) + Al(NO_3)_3(aq) \rightarrow 3\,AgNO_3 + Al(s)$$

Solution

Here, we first must convert the mass of Ag to moles before using the balanced chemical equation and then the definition of molarity as a conversion factor:

$$3.66\ g\ \cancel{Ag} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Ag}}{107.97\ g\ \cancel{Ag}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ \cancel{Al(NO_3)_3}}{3\ mol\ \cancel{Ag}} \times \frac{1 L\ solution}{0.0995\ mol\ \cancel{Al(NO_3)_3}} = 0.114\ L$$

The strikeouts show how the units cancel.

? Exercise 4.16.3

What volume of 0.512 M NaOH will react with 17.9 g of $H_2C_2O_4(s)$ according to the following chemical equation?

$$H_2C_2O_4(s) + 2\,NaOH(aq) \rightarrow Na_2C_2O_4(aq) + 2\,H_2O(\ell)$$

Answer:

0.777 L

We can extend our skills even further by recognizing that we can relate quantities of one solution to quantities of another solution. Knowing the volume and concentration of a solution containing one reactant, we can determine how much of another solution of another reactant will be needed using the balanced chemical equation.

✓ Example 4.16.4

A student takes a precisely measured sample, called an *aliquot*, of 10.00 mL of a solution of $FeCl_3$. The student carefully adds 0.1074 M $Na_2C_2O_4$ until all the Fe^{3+}(aq) has precipitated as $Fe_2(C_2O_4)_3$(s). Using a precisely measured tube called a burette, the student finds that 9.04 mL of the $Na_2C_2O_4$ solution was added to completely precipitate the Fe^{3+}(aq). What was the concentration of the $FeCl_3$ in the original solution? (A precisely measured experiment like this, which is meant to determine the amount of a substance in a sample, is called a *titration*.) The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$2\,\mathrm{FeCl_3(aq)} + 3\,\mathrm{Na_2C_2O_4(aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2(C_2O_4)_3(s)} + 6\,\mathrm{NaCl(aq)}$$

Solution

First we need to determine the number of moles of $Na_2C_2O_4$ that reacted. We will convert the volume to liters and then use the concentration of the solution as a conversion factor:

$$9.04\ m\cancel{L} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{L}}{1000\ m\cancel{L}} \times \frac{0.1074 mol\ Na_2C_2O_4}{\cancel{L}} = 0.000971\ mol\ Na_2C_2O_4$$

Now we will use the balanced chemical equation to determine the number of moles of Fe^{3+}(aq) that were present in the initial aliquot:

$$0.000971\ mol\ \cancel{Na_2C_2O_4} \times \frac{2 mol\ FeCl_3}{3\ mol \cancel{Na_2C_2O_4}} = 0.000647 mol\ FeCl_3$$

Then we determine the concentration of $FeCl_3$ in the original solution. Converting 10.00 mL into liters (0.01000 L), we use the definition of molarity directly:

$$M = \frac{mol}{L} = \frac{0.000647 mol\ FeCl_3}{0.01000 L} = 0.0647 M\ FeCl_3$$

? Exercise 4.16.4

A student titrates 25.00 mL of H_3PO_4 with 0.0987 M KOH. She uses 54.06 mL to complete the chemical reaction. What is the concentration of H_3PO_4?

$$\mathrm{H_3PO_4(aq)} + 3\,\mathrm{KOH(aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{K_3PO_4(aq)} + 3\,\mathrm{H_2O}$$

Answer:

0.0711 M

Figure 4.16.1 Titration © Thinkstock. When a student performs a titration, a measured amount of one solution is added to another reactant.

We have used molarity exclusively as the concentration of interest, but that will not always be the case. The next example shows a different concentration unit being used.

Example 4.16.5

H_2O_2 is used to determine the amount of Mn according to this balanced chemical equation:

$$2\,MnO_4^-(aq) + 5\,H_2O_2(aq) + 6\,H^+(aq) \rightarrow 2\,Mn_2^+(aq) + 5\,O_2(g) + 8\,H_2O(\ell)$$

What mass of 3.00% m/m H_2O_2 solution is needed to react with 0.355 mol of $MnO_4^-(aq)$?

Solution

Because we are given an initial amount in moles, all we need to do is use the balanced chemical equation to determine the number of moles of H_2O_2 and then convert to find the mass of H_2O_2. Knowing that the H_2O_2 solution is 3.00% by mass, we can determine the mass of solution needed:

$$0.355\ mol\ \cancel{MnO_4^-} \times \frac{5\ mol\ \cancel{H_2O_2}}{2\ mol \cancel{MnO_4^-}} \times \frac{34.02\ g\ \cancel{H_2O_2}}{mol\ \cancel{H_2O_2}} \times \frac{100 g\ solution}{3\ g\ \cancel{H_2O_2}} = 1006 g\ sol$$

The first conversion factor comes from the balanced chemical equation, the second conversion factor is the molar mass of H_2O_2, and the third conversion factor comes from the definition of percentage concentration by mass.

Exercise 4.16.5

Use the balanced chemical reaction for MnO_4^- and H_2O_2 to determine what mass of O_2 is produced if 258 g of 3.00% m/m H_2O_2 is reacted with MnO_4^-.

Answer

7.28 g

Summary

Know how to apply concentration units as conversion factors.

Index

Glossary

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: CHEM 110: Bellingham Technical College

Webpages: 66

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 80.3% (53 pages)
- Undeclared: 19.7% (13 pages)

By Page

- CHEM 110: Bellingham Technical College - *Undeclared*
  - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
    - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
    - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - 1: Module 1 - *Undeclared*
    - 1.1: Prelude to Chemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.2: Basic Definitions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.3: Chemistry as a Science - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.4: Prelude to Measurements - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.5: Expressing Numbers - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.6: Expressing Units - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.7: Significant Figures - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.8: Converting Units - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 1.9: Other Units - Temperature and Density - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 2: Module 2 - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.1: Prelude to Atoms, Molecules, and Ions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.2: Atomic Theory - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.3: Organization of Electrons in Atoms - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.4: Electronic Structure and the Periodic Table - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.5: Molecules and Chemical Nomenclature - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.6: Masses of Atoms and Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.7: Ions and Ionic Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.8: Prelude to Chemical Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.9: Lewis Electron Dot Diagrams - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.10: Electron Transfer - Ionic Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.11: Covalent Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.12: Other Aspects of Covalent Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 3: Module 3 - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.1: Prelude to Organic Chemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.2: Hydrocarbons - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.3: Branched Hydrocarbons - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.4: Alkyl Halides and Alcohols - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.5: Other Oxygen-Containing Functional Groups - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.6: Other Functional Groups - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.7: Polymers - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.8: Prelude to Chemical Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.9: The Chemical Equation - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.10: Types of Chemical Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.11: Ionic Equations - A Closer Look - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.12: Composition, Decomposition, and Combustion Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.13: Neutralization Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3.14: Oxidation-Reduction Reactions - *Undeclared*
  - 4: Module 4 - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.1: Stoichiometry - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.2: The Mole - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.3: The Mole in Chemical Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.4: Mole-Mass and Mass-Mass Calculations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.5: Yields - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.6: Limiting Reagents - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.7: Energy - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.8: Work and Heat - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.9: Enthalpy and Chemical Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 4.10: Intermolecular Forces - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

  - 4.11: Phase Transitions - Melting, Boiling, and Subliming - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.12: Prelude to Solutions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.13: Definitions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.14: Quantitative Units of Concentration - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.15: Dilutions and Concentrations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 4.16: Concentrations as Conversion Factors - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- Back Matter - *Undeclared*
  - Index - *Undeclared*
  - Glossary - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: CHEM 110: Bellingham Technical College

Webpages: 66

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 80.3% (53 pages)
- Undeclared: 19.7% (13 pages)

By Page

- CHEM 110: Bellingham Technical College - *Undeclared*
    - Front Matter - *Undeclared*
        - TitlePage - *Undeclared*
        - InfoPage - *Undeclared*
        - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
        - Licensing - *Undeclared*
    - 1: Module 1 - *Undeclared*
        - 1.1: Prelude to Chemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.2: Basic Definitions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.3: Chemistry as a Science - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.4: Prelude to Measurements - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.5: Expressing Numbers - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.6: Expressing Units - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.7: Significant Figures - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.8: Converting Units - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 1.9: Other Units - Temperature and Density - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2: Module 2 - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.1: Prelude to Atoms, Molecules, and Ions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.2: Atomic Theory - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.3: Organization of Electrons in Atoms - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.4: Electronic Structure and the Periodic Table - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.5: Molecules and Chemical Nomenclature - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.6: Masses of Atoms and Molecules - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.7: Ions and Ionic Compounds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.8: Prelude to Chemical Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.9: Lewis Electron Dot Diagrams - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.10: Electron Transfer - Ionic Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.11: Covalent Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 2.12: Other Aspects of Covalent Bonds - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 3: Module 3 - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.1: Prelude to Organic Chemistry - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.2: Hydrocarbons - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.3: Branched Hydrocarbons - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.4: Alkyl Halides and Alcohols - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.5: Other Oxygen-Containing Functional Groups - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.6: Other Functional Groups - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.7: Polymers - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.8: Prelude to Chemical Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.9: The Chemical Equation - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.10: Types of Chemical Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.11: Ionic Equations - A Closer Look - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.12: Composition, Decomposition, and Combustion Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.13: Neutralization Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 3.14: Oxidation-Reduction Reactions - *Undeclared*
    - 4: Module 4 - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.1: Stoichiometry - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.2: The Mole - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.3: The Mole in Chemical Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.4: Mole-Mass and Mass-Mass Calculations - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.5: Yields - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.6: Limiting Reagents - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.7: Energy - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.8: Work and Heat - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.9: Enthalpy and Chemical Reactions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
        - 4.10: Intermolecular Forces - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*